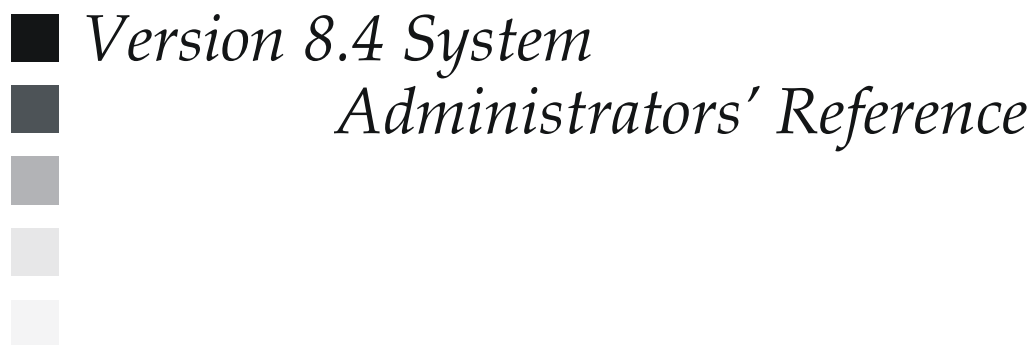




ISS45 V8 Office System Administrators' Reference Version 8.2.0

Date of Issue	Product Identification Number	Part Number	Brief Description
October 1998	45001/034	80602980	Preliminary Release
September 1999	45001/034	89000022	Version 8.1
March 2000	45001/034	89000033	Version 8.2.0
December 2002	45001/034	89000119	Version 8.4.2

Copyright® StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC 1995-2002
All rights reserved

This publication is protected by federal copyright law into any human or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, manual. No part of this publication may be copied or distributed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated or otherwise, or disclosed to third parties without the express written permission of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC makes no representation or warranties with respect to the contents hereof and specifically disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC further reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation of Fujitsu Transaction Solutions, Inc. to notify any person or organization of such revision or changes.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC has prepared this manual for use by users, authorized third parties and personnel of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC as a guide to the proper installation, operation, customization and/or maintenance of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC equipment and software. The drawings and specifications contained herein are the property of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC.

Address comments and corrections to:

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC
ISS45 Program Director
1250 East Arques Avenue
M/S 363
Sunnyvale, CA 94085

Table of Contents

1 System Parameter Tree.....	1-1
Overview	1-3
Using the System Parameter Tree	1-3
Locating Parameters	1-5
Setting and Updating Parameters	1-6
The Enable Feature	1-7
Parameter Types	1-9
System Parameter Explanations	1-23
Cash Office Parameters	1-23
POST Parameters	1-35
Front Office Parameters	1-155
POS Units and Measures Parameters.....	1-192
Programmable Barcodes Parameters	1-193
Fuel Parameters	1-196
Technical Parameters.....	1-199
Store Parameters	1-203
2 POS Setup.....	2-1
POS Configuration	2-3
Checkout Banks	2-23
POS Parameters	2-30
Key and Drawers Parameters.....	2-30
Sign On/Off and Secure Parameters	2-33
WIC Options	2-36

Tax and Food Stamp Options	2-39
Frequent Shopper Options	2-44
Card Program.....	2-52
Charge Posting Parameters	2-57
Discount Options	2-60
Customer Display Messages.....	2-62
Rounding Parameters	2-64
Member Card & Promotions	2-65
Additional Tender Information	2-75
Trading Stamps	2-78
Coupon Parameters	2-83
Restricted Sales Options.....	2-103
EFT Parameters	2-111
POS Measures and Currency	2-112
Control Check Options	2-113
POST User Hooks.....	2-124
General POST Parameters	2-133
Variable Price/Weight Item.....	2-146
Gift Card	2-148
POS Receipt Setup.....	2-151
Receipt Logo	2-151
Receipt Header Footer	2-154
Retailer Information	2-157
Organize Receipt.....	2-159
Receipt Printing, Signs, Bonus Buy.....	2-165
POS Keyboards	2-182
Keyboard Functions	2-182

3 Front Office Configuration	3-1
Front Office Parameters	3-3
Store Parameters	3-3
Cash Office Parameters	3-4
PLU and Batch Parameters	3-13
End of Day Parameters	3-23
End of Day System Parameters	3-23
End of Day Exceptional Dates	3-30
Automatic End of Day Parameters	3-32
End of Day Report Parameters	3-33
Report Parameters	3-36
PCs in System.....	3-41
Adding a New PC to the System	3-43
Host PC Parameters	3-44
Printer Parameters	3-45
Data Tracking.....	3-46
CDV Schemes.....	3-47
4 Preferences.....	4-1
Customize Application.....	4-3
Changing System Colors	4-3
5 Menu Builder and Menu Editor.....	5-1
Menu Builder	5-3
Adding, Editing and Deleting a User.....	5-4
Adding and Deleting a Menu	5-7
Linking Users to Menus	5-9
Menu Editor.....	5-11

About Security	5-11
Editing a Menu	5-12
Translating Menu Text.....	5-18
6 Language Utilities.....	6-1
System Language	6-3
Adding a System Language	6-3
Changing the System Language.....	6-5
About Translating	6-5
Translate Control Names	6-6
Translating Strings.....	6-8
Translate Messages	6-10
Translating Menu Names.....	6-13
Transale Report Strings	6-15
Change String	6-17
7 Technical Support	7-1
Master File Create	7-3
Store Open Service.....	7-3
Clearing the System's Transaction Data	7-4
System Integrity	7-5
System Integrity Parameters	7-5
QDX Files Checksum Table	7-9
Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS	7-11
Technical Parameters	7-13

8 System Alerts	8-1
Overview	8-3
Accessing the System Alerts Menu	8-4
Alerts Maintenance	8-5
Predefined Alerts	8-8
Defining Alert Specifications	8-14
Adding a New Alert	8-16
Deleting an Alert	8-17
Alert Severity Levels	8-18
Alerts Parameters	8-21
Alerts Recipient	8-23
Adding a New Alerts Recipient	8-24
Editing Alerts Recipients	8-29
Specifying Which Recipients Receive an Alert	8-30
Alerts Log	8-32
Searching for Specific Alerts	8-34
Alerts Log Window	8-36
Sorting the Alerts Log List	8-39
9 User Access Log	9-1
User Access Log Utility	9-3
Selecting Menu Entries for Tracking	9-3
User Access Log Queries	9-6

1

System Parameter Tree

This chapter provides an overview of the System Parameter tree, its structure, how to search for parameters and the various parameter types in the system.

Additionally, explanations for most of the Cash Office parameters and POST parameters are provided.

In this chapter:

Overview, page 1-3

Using the System Parameter Tree, page 1-3

System Parameter Explanations, page 1-23

Cash Office Parameters, page 1-23

POST Parameters, page 1-35

Front Office Parameters, page 1-155

POS Units and Measures Parameters, page 1-192

Programmable Barcodes, page 1-193

Fuel Parameters, page 1-196

Technical Parameters, page 1-199

Store Information Parameters, page 1-203

Overview

The *System Parameter Tree* comprises most of the system parameters of the *StoreLine/ISS45* application. The parameters are categorized in such a way that provides easy access to each parameter.

The various parameter types are described in this chapter, and illustrated by examples. Additionally, a description of the *Enable* feature is provided.

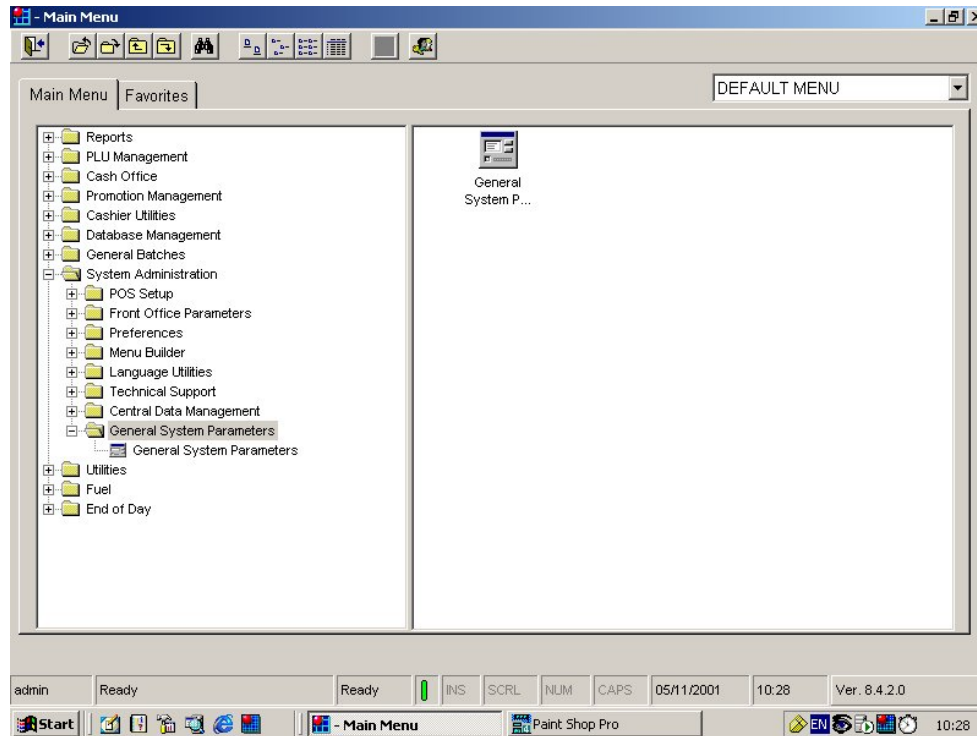
For explanations on the remaining parameters that are not included in the *System Parameter Tree*, refer to the *POS Configuration* and *Front Office Configuration* chapters in this Guide.

Using the System Parameter Tree

The toolbar functionality is the same as in the entire *StoreLine/ISS45* application. (For further information on toolbar functionality refer to the *QuickStart Reference*.)

➤ To access the System Parameter Tree

- 1 From the *Main Menu* tab, select the *System Administration* folder, and then the *General System Parameters* folder. The *General System Parameters* window is displayed.

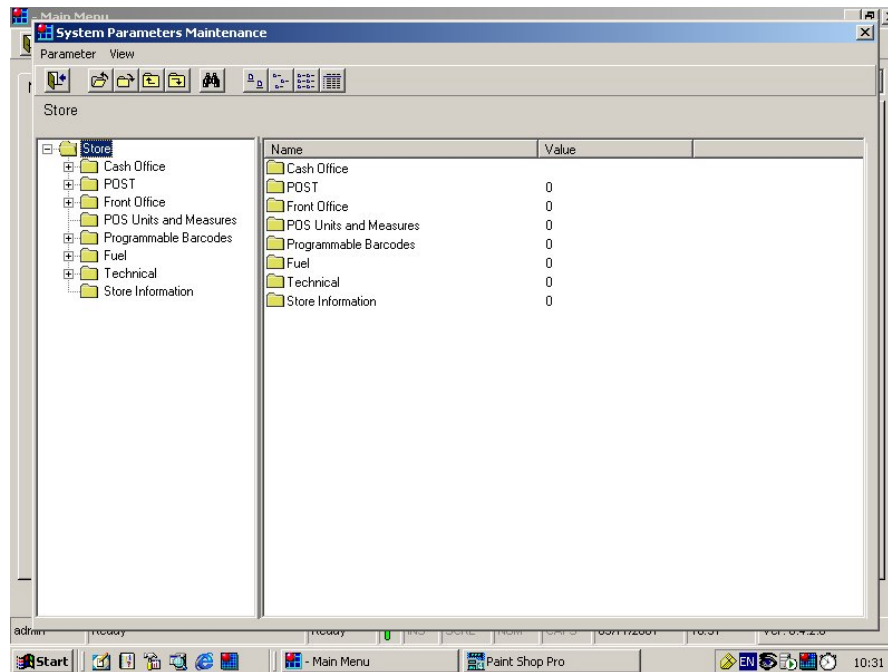


- 2 Double-click the General System Parameters folder to display the System Parameter Maintenance window.

Note:

Wait for the System Parameters to load; this process may take a few moments.

- 3 Double-click the *Store* folder. The various categories in the *System Parameter Tree* are displayed as follows:



Locating a particular parameter can be performed either by using the *Search* tool, or by using the Tree Hierarchy, as explained below.

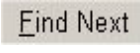
Locating Parameters

Locating a parameter in the *System Parameter Tree* can be done by searching for the name of the required parameter, or its approximate location. Opening the relevant folders and sub-folders, will eventually lead you to the required parameter.

At any level in the *System Parameter Tree* you may search using

the *Search* button , and by entering the full parameter's name, or one or more words included in the name.

➤ **To search for a parameter**

- 1 From the Toolbar click  to display the *Lookup* dialog.
- 2 Enter the name of the required parameter, or one word of it.
- 3 Click  to display the required parameter.
- 4 Click *Cancel* if the required parameter has been located.

Or

Click  to resume the search.

Setting and Updating Parameters

Once you have located the required parameter, you can proceed with the update.

➤ **To access a parameter**

Double-click the relevant line of the parameter.

Or

Highlight the relevant line and select *Enter*. The *System Parameter Maintenance* window is displayed (See screen above).

The *Enable* Feature

The objective of the *Enable* feature is to control authorization of users to change parameter settings. Only a system administrator can define a user as authorized to revise a specific parameter. This is done by activating the *Enable* feature.

An administrator can use one of the following two ways to define a parameter as *Enabled* or *Disabled* for a user.

➤ **To define a parameter as Enabled**

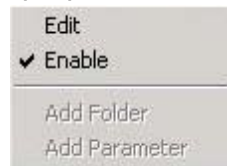
Note:

This can be performed only by administrative personnel.

Once the required parameter's screen is displayed, select the Enable checkbox, and then click *Apply*.

Or

Right-click the parameter's icon in the Tree, then select *Enable* from the pop-up menu, as follows:



When the *Enable* feature is switched on for a particular parameter for a specific user, the user who is logged-on can see the parameter in the *System Parameter Tree*, and is able to display the parameter's dialog. In this case the *Enable* checkbox is checked, though appears gray, as displayed below, and the user may revise the settings for this parameter.



When the *Enable* feature is disabled for a particular parameter, this means that the user is not authorized to change this parameter, thus it cannot be viewed by this user in the *System Parameter Tree*.

Parameter Types

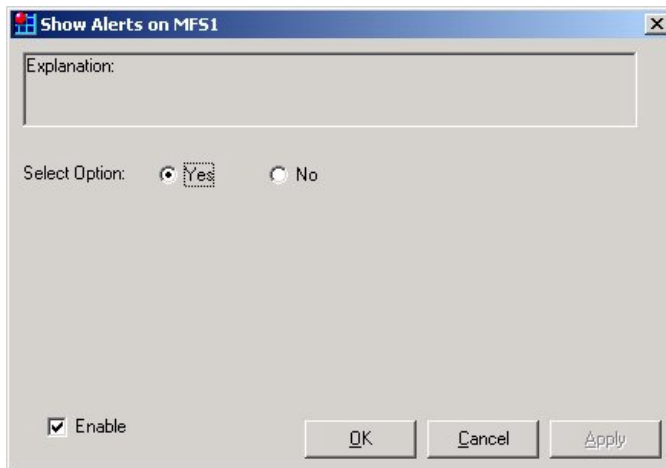
There are several categories of parameters, each of which require different types of data to be entered or selected. The following are examples of all the parameter types in the system:

- Yes/No Parameters
- Tiny Integer Parameters
- Small Integer Parameters
- Long Integer Parameters (Integer)
- Float Parameters
- Free-Text (String) Parameters
- Range for Single Value Parameters
- Single Date Parameters
- Range for Time Parameters
- Single Time Parameters
- Tax Reversal Parameters
- Path String Parameters
- Rounding Parameters
- End of Month Parameters
- Points Redemption Parameters
- IP Address Parameters

- Currency Parameters
- Check-Box Options Parameters
- List Parameters
- Multi-Line Parameters

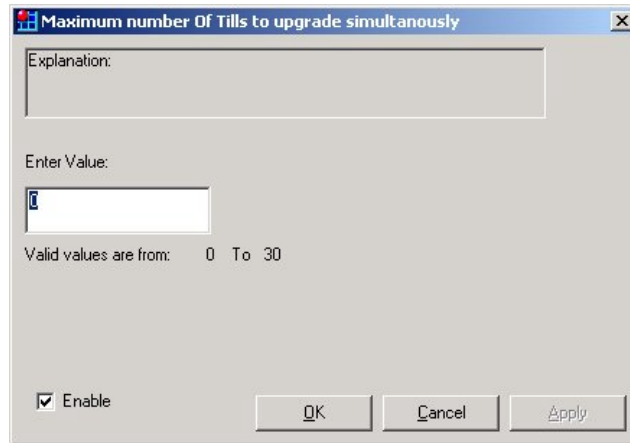
Yes/No Parameters

This parameter type presents the user with a Yes/No option.



Tiny Integer Parameters

This parameter type comprises a range of numeric values between 0 – 255. Entering a value outside of the given range will display an error message.



The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box with the title "Maximum number Of Tills to upgrade simultaneously". It contains an "Explanation:" text area at the top. Below it is a label "Enter Value:" followed by a text input field. Under the input field, it says "Valid values are from: 0 To 30". At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enable". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Small Integer Parameters

This parameter type comprises a range of numeric values between 0 – 32,767. Entering a value outside of the given range will display an error message.

Long Integer Parameters (Integer)

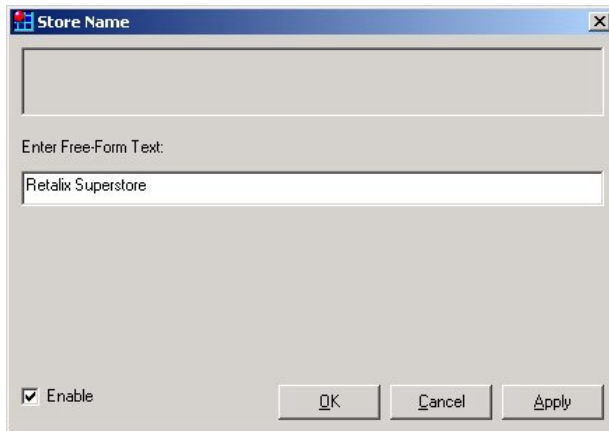
This parameter type comprises a wide range of numeric values between 0 – 2,147,483,641. Entering a value outside of the given range will display an error message.

Float Parameters

This parameter type is similar to the Integer parameter type, but comprises a range of numeric values that have decimals points.

Free-Text (String) Parameters

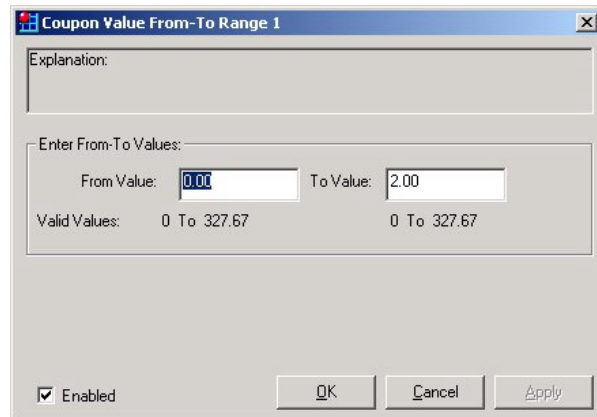
This parameter type includes a field for entering free-text, enabling the user to enter up to 255 characters.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Store Name" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there is a large empty text area at the top. Below it, the label "Enter Free-Form Text:" is followed by a single-line text input field containing the text "Retailix Superstore". At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enable". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Range for Single Value Parameters

This parameter type comprises a range of a low and a high value, each of which is selected from a separate range.

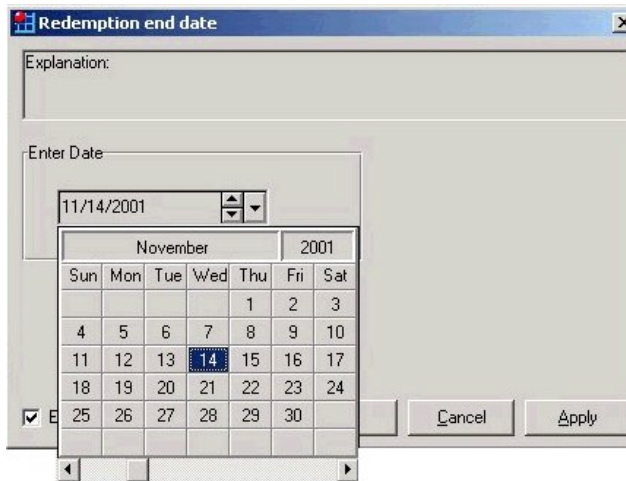


The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Coupon Value From-To Range 1". It has a standard Windows-style title bar with a close button. The dialog contains an "Explanation:" text area at the top. Below it is a section titled "Enter From-To Values:". This section contains two input fields: "From Value:" with the value "0.00" and "To Value:" with the value "2.00". Below these fields, it says "Valid Values: 0 To 327.67" for both the from and to values. At the bottom of the dialog, there is a checkbox labeled "Enabled" which is checked, and three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

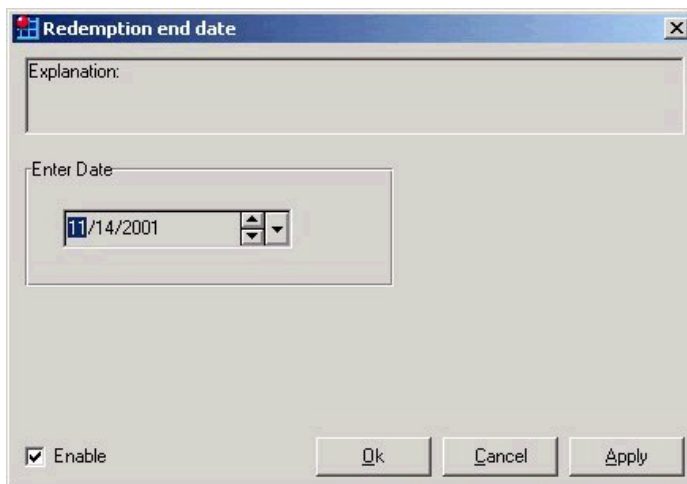
Single Date Parameters

This parameter type presents the user with the option of selecting a date from the calendar.

This can be done by clicking the arrow button  to display a drop-down calendar, and then selecting the required day.



Alternatively, you can place the cursor on the month, day or year in the *Enter Date* field and then use the up/down arrows  to display the required date.



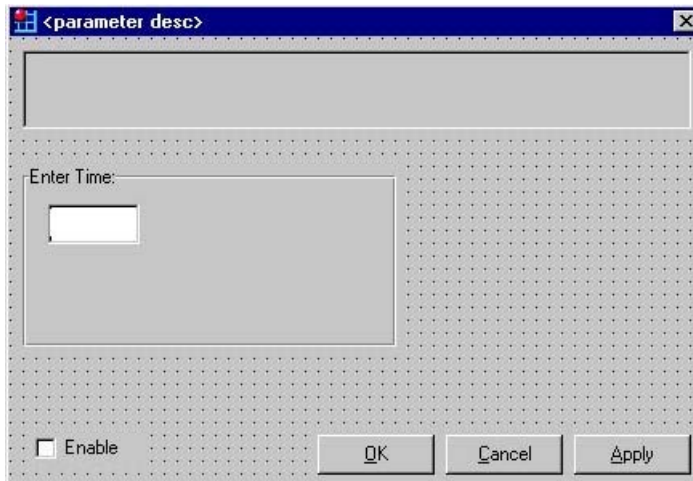
Range for Time Parameters

This parameter type enables the user to enter a *From – To* time range.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "<parameter desc>". It contains a text area for "<Explanation:>". Below this is a section titled "Enter Time Range:" which includes two input fields: "From Time:" and "To Time:". Under the "From Time:" field is the placeholder text "<xx:xx> -<yy:yy>". Under the "To Time:" field is the placeholder text "<xx:xx> -<yy:yy>". Below these fields is a label "Time Format:". At the bottom left is a checkbox labeled "Enabled". At the bottom right are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Single Time Parameters

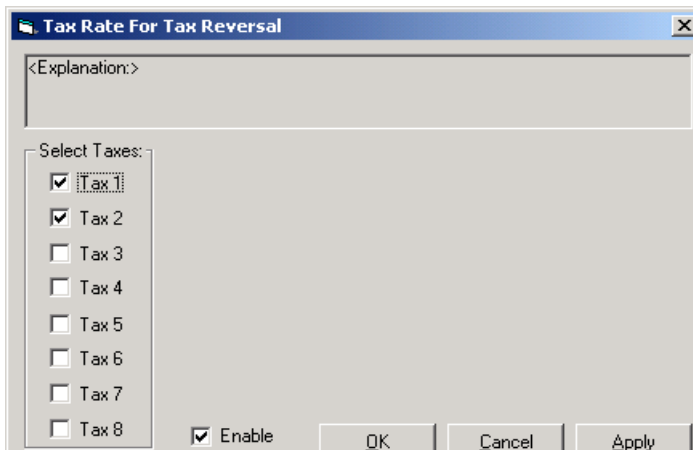
This parameter type enables the user to enter a single time.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "<parameter desc>". It features a large empty text area at the top. Below this, there is a label "Enter Time:" followed by a small rectangular input field. At the bottom left, there is a checkbox labeled "Enable". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Tax Reversal Parameters

This is a multi-parameter, in which the user can select one, some, all or none of the relevant tax types.

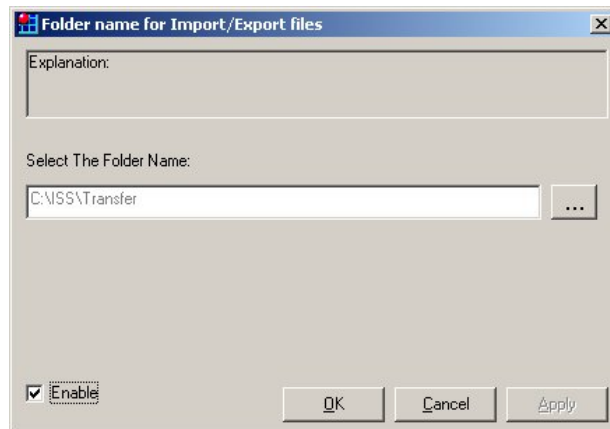


The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Tax Rate For Tax Reversal". It has a label "<Explanation:>" above a large empty text area. Below the text area, there is a section labeled "Select Taxes:" containing a list of checkboxes for "Tax 1" through "Tax 8". "Tax 1" and "Tax 2" are checked, while "Tax 3" through "Tax 8" are unchecked. At the bottom left, there is a checkbox labeled "Enable" which is checked. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Path String Parameters

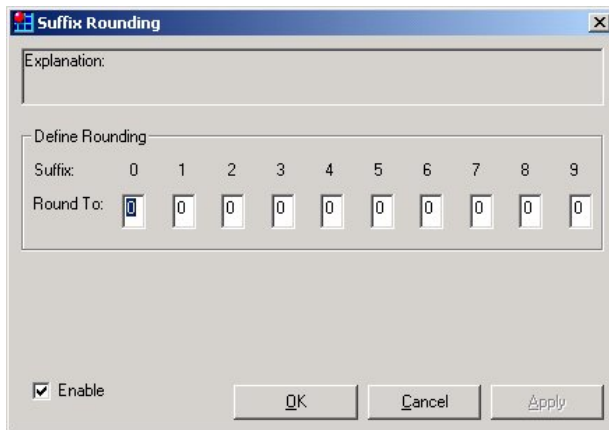
This parameter type enables the user to select an existent folder, with no ability to change the folder's name.

To locate the required folder click the browser button .



Rounding Parameters

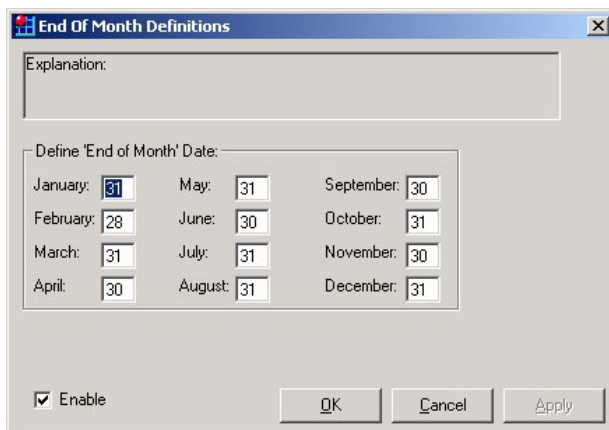
This is a multi-parameter in which the user can specify the value to which each of the 10 suffixes will be rounded.



The **Suffix Rounding** dialog box contains an **Explanation:** text area at the top. Below it is the **Define Rounding** section, which includes a **Suffix:** row with digits 0 through 9 and a **Round To:** row with ten spin boxes, each currently set to 0. At the bottom, there is a checked **Enable** checkbox and three buttons: **OK**, **Cancel**, and **Apply**.

End of Month Parameters

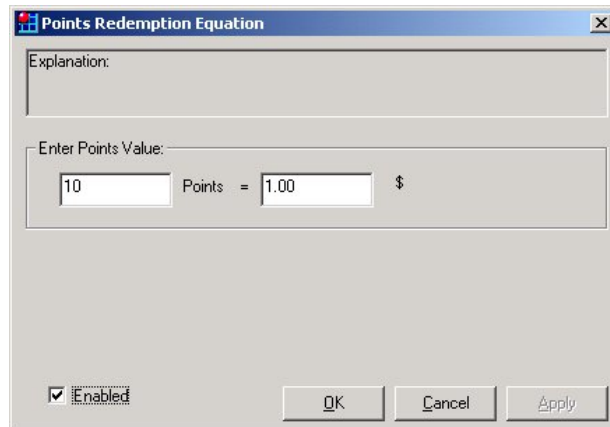
This is a multi-parameter in which the user specifies the day in each month, on which the *End of Month* procedure will be performed. The default date is the last calendar date of each month.



The **End Of Month Definitions** dialog box features an **Explanation:** text area. The **Define 'End of Month' Date:** section contains a 3x3 grid of month and day spin boxes. The values are: January: 31, May: 31, September: 30; February: 28, June: 30, October: 31; March: 31, July: 31, November: 30; April: 30, August: 31, December: 31. At the bottom, there is a checked **Enable** checkbox and three buttons: **OK**, **Cancel**, and **Apply**.

Points Redemption Parameters

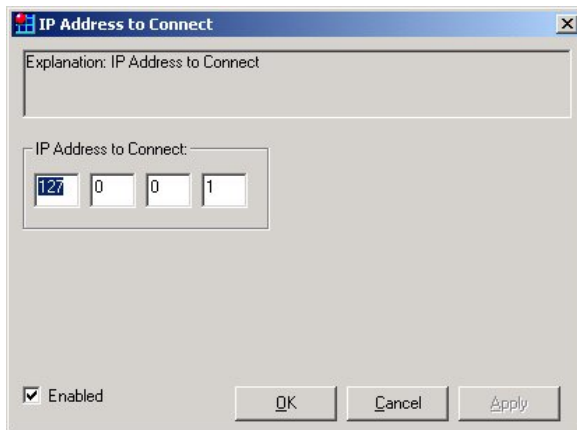
This parameter type enables the user to enter the conversion rate from Points into local currency.



The dialog box titled "Points Redemption Equation" contains an "Explanation:" text area at the top. Below it is a section labeled "Enter Points Value:" which includes a text input field containing the number "10", followed by the text "Points = ", a second text input field containing "1.00", and a dollar sign "\$". At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enabled". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

IP Address Parameters

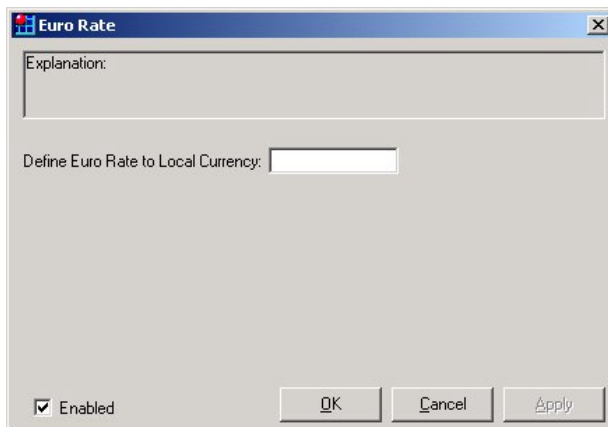
This parameter type comprises 4 separate fields, each of which may be defined between 0-255.



The dialog box is titled "IP Address to Connect" and has a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains a text area labeled "Explanation: IP Address to Connect". Below this is a label "IP Address to Connect:" followed by four input fields for an IP address. The first field contains "127", the second "0", the third "0", and the fourth "1". At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enabled". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Currency Parameters

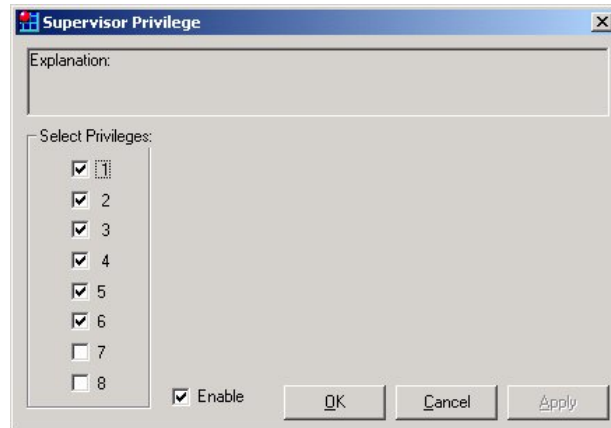
This parameter type enables a user to enter the conversion rate between the Euro and local currency.



The dialog box is titled "Euro Rate" and has a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains a text area labeled "Explanation:". Below this is a label "Define Euro Rate to Local Currency:" followed by a single input field. At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enabled". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Check-Box Options Parameters

This is a multi-parameter enabling the user to select several checkboxes; this parameter is used for selecting Tax Types, Supervisor Privileges, Days of the Week, etc.



List Parameters

This parameter type comprises a drop-down list, of which the user may select one of the options, such as Tenders, Control Checks, Departments or Club-Cards.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CC for Transaction Void". It has a text area for "Explanation:". Below this is a label "Select from the Control Check list:" followed by a list box containing the following items: "Price Over Lmt", "Price Below Lmt", "Neg Entry Exceed", "Tender Invalid", "Over Daily Limit", "NO SALE", "Tender Correct", and "Manager Required". At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enable". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Multi-Line Parameters

This parameter type comprises several lines, enabling the user to enter specific text in each line.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Store Address". It has a text area for "Explanation:". Below this is a label "Enter Lines Text:" followed by a group box containing five empty text input lines. At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Enabled". At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

System Parameter Explanations

Cash Office Parameters

Cashier Balancing Period Parameters

Allow Delayed Cashier/POST Balancing: This parameter provides the option of allowing the system to operate using Delayed Cashier/POST Balancing. The Delayed Cashier /POST Balancing options enables cashiers/POST to retain balances for two shifts (current and previous).

Transfer Period on End of Week (Default is every day): This parameter indicates when to transfer a period. Selecting No transfers the period every day. This selection is overridden by the day/s specified in the Do Not Transfer Period on Particular Day parameter. Selecting Yes transfers the period at EOW.

Ask Lock Cashier/POS Before Locking: This parameter provides the option of displaying a message before Cashier/POS Locking, confirming that this POST will be locked. The message will be displayed at the Office computer.

Do Not Transfer Period

Do not Transfer Period on Particular Day: This parameter provides the option to select the days on which the transferring of a period will not occur. It is optional to select more than one day. Using this parameter is possible only when the Transfer Period on End of Week parameter is set on No.

POS Accountability Parameters

POS Accountability in System: Selecting Yes will set the system to operate on POS Accountability. Selecting No will set the system to operate on Cashier Accountability.

Print Report After

Cashier/POS Add Loan: This parameter defines the printing options for the Cashier/POS Add/Loan Report, after performing Cashier/POS Add/Loan.

Cashier/POS Pickup: This parameter defines the printing options for the Cashier/POS Pickup Report, after performing Cashier/POS Pickup.

Cashier/POS Declaration: This parameter defines the printing options for the Cashier/POS Declaration Report, after performing Cashier/POS Declaration.

Bank Deposit: This parameter defines the printing options for the Bank Deposit Report, after performing a Bank Deposit.

Bank Receipt: This parameter defines the printing options for the Bank Receipt Report, after performing a Bank Receipt.

Payout: This parameter defines the printing options for the Payout Report, after performing a Payout.

ROA (Received on Account): This parameter defines the printing options for the ROA Report, after performing an ROA.

Safe Declaration: This parameter defines the printing options for the Safe Declaration Report, after performing a Safe Declaration.

Function Parameters

Cashier/POS Locking Parameters

Print Reports for all Cashiers/POSTS, Active and Non-Active:

This parameter enables the user to print reports for all Cashiers/POSTs (active and non-active), rather than the default of print only those that were active during the trading period.

Auto Cashier Lock at End of Day: This parameter provides the option of automatically locking Cashier/POSTs tender totals during the End of Day process.

Automatic Locking for Cashier on POS Accountability

System: When POS accountability is selected this parameter provides the option of automatically locking Cashier tender totals during End of Day.

Keep Data After Cashier/POS Locking (Do not Erase): This parameter provides the option of keeping the cashier/POS data after their till has been locked. When set to Yes, the SHIFT_EMP_MEDIA and SHIFT_EMP_MEDIA tables will not be erased.

Perform Locking on all Cashiers/POSTs: This parameter allows all Cashiers/POSTs to be locked simultaneously. This option may be useful in stores where there are a large number of Cashiers or POSTs.

Maximum Over/Short Percentage to Allow Locking: This parameter indicates the maximum Over/Short percentage of the Cashier's Declaration allowed in order to perform Cashier/POS Locking.

Reports to Print During Locking (sub-folder)

Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier/POS Declaration Report: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Declaration Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

Cashier/POS Locking: Print Operator/POS Trial Balance Report: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Operator/POS Trial Balance Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

Cashier/POS Locking: Print Operator/POS Summary Balance Report: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Operator/POS Summary Balance Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier/POS Report: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier/POS Accountability Report: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Accountability Report, after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

Cashier/POS Locking: Print Pickup & Loan Report: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Pickup & Loan Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier/POS Cash (Tender) Report: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Tender Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

Cashier/POS Declaration Parameters

Update Safe Totals Immediately After Cashier/POS

Declaration: This parameter specifies that once Cashier/POS Declaration is performed, the amount will be immediately reflected in the Safe Totals. When selecting No, the Declaration amount will only be reflected after Locking.

Allow Cashier/POST Declaration in Current Period While

Signed-On: This parameter provides the option to perform Declarations while the Cashiers/POSTs are Signed-on.

Allow Declarations for Cashiers/POSTs not Signed-On In

Period: This parameter provides the option to allow Cashiers/POSTs who are not Signed-on to perform a Declaration.

Allow Manual Editing of Tenders Marked as Auto

Declaration: This parameter provides the option to allow performing Manual Editing of Tenders defined as 'Auto-Declaration', as these are entered automatically.

Do Not Show Over/Short Tab at Cashier/POS Declaration:

This parameter provides the option of not displaying the Over/Short tab at Cashier Declaration. The objective is to prevent cashiers from viewing the expected Declaration amount.

Enhanced Reports on POS /Cashier Declaration: This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the following reports upon Cashier Declaration: Itemized Check Report by Cashier, Detailed Pickup & Loan Report, Cashier Tender Report and Declaration Report.

Cashier/POS Pickup/Loan Parameters

Allow Transactions (Pickups & Loans) After Cashier/POSTs

Locked: This parameter provides the option of modifying a Pickup or Loan, after the Cashier/POS has been locked, to adjust the Cashier's Balancing. This would be used, for example, when Tender is found in the Cash Drawer after Cashier/POS Locking.

Update Safe Totals Immediately After Cashier Function in

POST: This parameter provides the option that when Cashier functions are performed at the POST, they will be reflected immediately in the Safe Totals.

Automatic Pickup/Loan of Over/Short: This parameter, used in 24-hour trading stores, enables Cashiers to remain Signed-on during EOD, thus their Accountable Balance is unchanged after EOD is completed. This parameter is enabled when the Automatic Locking During EOD parameter is selected.

Omit Add Loan screen when Log-On as Supervisor/Store

Manager: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Add Loan pop-up screen will not be displayed when a Supervisor or Store manager has Signed-on at the POS terminal.

Payout/ROA Parameters

Enhanced Payout and Receipt: This parameter provides the option of using multi-detailed templates for the various Payouts and Receipts, enabling you to work with the Enhanced Receipt and Payout Report. When set to Yes, Payouts and Receipts may only be performed at the Front Office, not at the POS terminal.

Store Number CDV Scheme: If the store uses Branch Number Check Digit Validation, this parameter specifies the branch number, which has to satisfy the check digit calculation to be valid.

Safe Parameters

Multi Safe Mode: This parameter provides the option of supporting multiple safes on the system.

Safe Locking Parameters

Do Not Allow Locking if Unlocked Cashiers/POSTs Found: This parameter provides the option to disallow Safe Locking, if there are still unlocked Cashiers or POSTs.

Specify Copies to Print at Safe Locking (sub-folder)

Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Safe Report: This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Safe Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Weekly Payouts Report: This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Weekly Payouts Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Weekly ROA Report: This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Weekly ROA Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Department Sales Analysis for Last Week: This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Department Sales Analysis for Last Week that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Branch Expenses Summary Report: This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Branch Expenses Summary Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Office Cash Balance Report: This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Office Cash Balance Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

POST Parameters

Operational

These operational parameters relate to the POST.

Code Distribution & R Session

Code Distribution is a software application that automatically distributes and performs software upgrades to the POS terminals. Code Distribution enables POS terminals to upgrade automatically when in Sign-off mode. In Sign-on mode, system parameters provide options to enable seamless software upgrades without interfering with normal sales transactions.

An Rsession is a communication channel that supports communication between the MFS1 server, the MFS2 and each POS terminal. Defining Rsession parameters enables Code Distribution software upgrades and prevents overloads in MFS1.

Max. No. of Tills to Upgrade Simultaneously: This parameter specifies the maximum number of POS terminals to upgrade simultaneously. For example, if the store has 20 POS terminals, they may elect to upgrade only 10 POS terminals simultaneously. A maximum of 30 POS terminals can be upgraded simultaneously.

Rsession Active Flag: This parameter enables the Rsession feature and associated parameters. It is recommended to always check the Rsession Active checkbox. Selecting this checkbox ensures that the system will not overload.

Rsession Communication Timeout: This parameter is disabled and will always be set to 0.

No. of Tickets Between Retries of Upgrade: This parameter specifies the number of sale tickets that can be processed, after which a cashier prompt message will reappear and Code Distribution will retry the POS terminal software upgrade in Sign-on mode.

Max. No. of Seconds Between Retries of Upgrade: This parameter specifies the interval (in seconds) after which a cashier prompt message will reappear, and Code Distribution will retry the software upgrade.

Max. No. of Seconds to Wait for User Confirmation: This parameter specifies the interval (in seconds) that Code Distribution will wait for cashier confirmation before it automatically starts the upgrade.

Control Checks

Control Checks alert authorized store personnel to various conditions or events that may occur at the POS terminal. When control checks are triggered, they display a message at the POS terminal and require a form of response. Various response types can be set up which may allow cashiers to continue, or force them to call a supervisor (for example, 'Ask Yes/No', 'Continue', 'Warning', 'Supervisor Key-lock' or 'Inhibit Action').

These Control Check parameters allow you to select which POS conditions or events need to be monitored and controlled.

Bypass Control Check if Conditions Met: This parameter provides the option to bypass for a cashier to bypass the Control Check, thus it will not be displayed if all necessary conditions are met. These conditions include cashier's privilege and key-lock position.

Sale (sub-folder)

CC for Keying Weighed Items (No Scale): This parameter monitors authorized personnel to key-in weighed items, in order to sell an item when the scale is out of order.

CC for No-Sale Within a Transaction: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to perform a No-Sale within a Transaction, i.e., opening the Cash Drawer using the No-Sale function #908.

CC for No-Sale Outside a Transaction: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to perform a No-Sale, i.e., opening the Cash Drawer outside a Transaction.

CC for Price Override: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to sell an item at a different price than what appears in the PLU file. This is performed using the Price Override function #930.

CC for Offline Supervisor Request: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check to display if the POS terminal is off-line, and a supervisor is required to authorize some kind of transaction.

CC for Exceeding Qty Limit at Scanning: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to exceed maximum quantity of one type of item allowed to be scanned. This is performed by pressing the Multiply function #42, then indicating the required amount, and then scanning the item once.

Scanning Quantity Limit: This parameter specifies the maximum number of times an item may be scanned before prompting a Control Check.

Cancel/Void/Return (sub-folder): Cancel (=Void Last, Error Correct, #901) removes the last item before completing the ticket. Void Transaction #900 removes a transaction. Subtract (=Void Item, Subtract Next, #902) removes an item before completing the ticket.

CC for Exceeding Cancel/Subtract Limit: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the maximum voided sum allowed for one ticket. The Control Check will be displayed when pressing the Total key.

Cancel/Subtract Limit Amount: This parameter specifies the maximum sum that can be voided from a ticket, before prompting a Control Check.

CC for Transaction Void: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when using the Void Transaction function, i.e., voiding the entire ticket.

CC for Subtract Next During Item Registration: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Subtract Next, i.e., voiding an item, during a transaction. The Control Check will be displayed immediately when attempting to use the Subtract function #902.

CC for Item Cancel During Item Registration: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Item Cancel during a transaction.

CC for Subtract Next/Item Cancel After Completion: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Subtract Next, i.e., voiding an item after a transaction. This Control Check will be displayed after the Subtract Next function has been performed.

CC for Return Transactions, After Completion: This parameter provides the option to select the Control Check required when performing a Return Transaction #905, i.e., refunding a transaction. The Control Check will be displayed once the Cash Drawer is opened in a Return Transaction.

Order (sub-folder)

Max Total of Negative in Order: This parameter specifies the Maximum Negative amount allowed in a ticket.

CC for Max Total of Negative in Order: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the Maximum Negative amount allowed in a ticket. This Control Check is displayed after pressing the Total key.

Max Negative Percent of the Order: This parameter specifies the Maximum Percentage of a Negative sum in the total ticket allowed in a transaction.

CC for Max Negative Percent of the Order: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the Maximum Negative Total Percentage allowed per ticket.

CC for Exceeding Max Amount in Negative Transactions: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the Maximum Amount of Negative Transactions, i.e., the amount owed to the customer.

Max Amount for Negative Transactions: This parameter specifies the Maximum Amount allowed for Negative Transactions in a ticket, i.e., the amount owed to the customer.

Save/Recall (sub-folder): These parameters relate to three separate functions: Save #958, Recall #959 (can be performed from any POST), and Save/Recall #913.

CC for Saving Transactions with Partial Tender: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to perform Save Transaction on a transaction for which some payment was accepted.

CC for Save/Recall Ticket in Off-Line Mode: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing a Save/Recall transaction.

CC for Save Ticket: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Save on a ticket.

CC for Recall Ticket: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Recall on a ticket.

CC for Log-Off When Un-Recalled Tickets Found: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Log-Off when Un-Recalled ticket is found.

Tender (sub-folder)

CC for Credit Card Tender that Exceeds Eligible Amount:

This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the maximum charge amount allowed in Credit Card Tender.

CC for Off-Line Bad Account Request: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to accept tender when POST is in Off-line without performing a Bad-Account Check. This Control Check is related to the flag 'Check Bad Account' in Tender Maintenance.

CC for Off-Line ECCA Request: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to accept ECCA-regulated tender when in Off-line, thus impossible to perform an ECCA Check. The ECCA utility stores customer account data and monitors the use of these accounts.

Printing (sub-folder)

CC for Printer Paper Low: Receipt: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when a message is displayed at the POST notifying of low paper in the receipt printer. This parameter is relevant only to printers with this capability.

CC for Pressing Item Cancel During Template/Slip Print: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when Item Cancel is pressed while a check or a receipt are being printed.

CC for Bypass Check Printing: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to cancel printing on the front of the check. When paying with a check the system is set to print on the front and back of the check.

CC for Bypass Check Endorsement: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to cancel the printing of the check endorsement in the back of the check, i.e., store details.

CC for Bypass Tender Template Printing: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to bypass Tender Template printing.

CC for Printer Paper Low: Audit: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when printer paper for audit (receipt copies) is low; relevant only in POSTs with Audit-Printing capability.

CC to Print Voucher on Duplicate Receipt: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to reprint a voucher that results from a credit program. This parameter relates to the function Print Last Transaction, e.g., if slip was ripped, jammed or additional copy is requested.

Customer (sub-folder)

CC for Customer Account Off-Line: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to authorize a transaction when in Off-line mode, i.e., Cashier is unable to check Customer Account.

CC for Customer Account Not On File: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to allow a transaction in which the Customer Account was not found, e.g., when customer is a new customer and their account does not exist.

CC for Customer Account Insufficient Funds: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to allow a transaction in which the Customer has exceeded their Customer Account limit.

CC to Restrict Redemption of Customer Accounts Out of Sale: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to allow a customer to withdraw funds from their Customer Account outside of a sale.

Cashier (sub-folder)

CC to Bypass Cashier Not Found During Off-Line Sign-On: This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to bypass the message displayed when a cashier Signs-on in Off-line mode; this message informs that Cashier name is not found on POST Cashier file.

Drawer

Cash in Drawer Limit for “Over Limit Cashier’s Report”: This parameter indicates the maximum amount allowed in the Cash Drawer. Once exceeded, the Dollar icon is displayed on the Cashier’s Display. A list of Cashiers who have exceeded this amount appears in the Over Limit Cashier’s Report.

Open Drawer on Tender Purchase: This parameter provides the option to prompt the opening of the Cash Drawer when performing a Tender Purchase, i.e., giving cash in exchange for a Paycheck or when swiping a Debit card.

Open Drawer in Training Mode: This parameter provides the option to prompt the opening of the Cash Drawer when in Training Mode.

Open Drawer on End of Day: This parameter provides the option to open all Cash Drawers at EOD.

Open Drawer Timeout: This parameter specifies the number of seconds that the Cash Drawer has been open and no key has been pressed, after which a beeping sound is prompted. Pressing any key before the timeout will prompt a beeping sound and display a ‘Close Drawer’ message.

Food Stamps in Drawer Limit: This parameter indicates the maximum total sum of Food Stamps allowed in the Cash Drawer, which once exceeded the Food Stamps icon is displayed on the Cashier's Display.

Beep for Cash in Drawer Limit: This parameter provides the option to allow the POST to beep 10 times when the predefined cash in drawer limit has been exceeded. This audible beep will be in addition to the Dollar icon that is displayed on the Cashier's Display.

Keyboard

Enter Key as UPC Key: This parameter provides the option of using the Enter key to perform the UPC function (UPC=Universal Price Code), i.e., searching for a PLU number including the check digit.

Use Enter Key as Total: This parameter provides the option of using the Enter key to perform the Total function.

PLU/UPC/Enter Repeat Key in Use: This parameter provides the option of automatically adding the last item that was rung up again by using the PLU/UPC/Enter function. This function is used at POSTs with a minimal number of keys on the keyboard.

Department Repeat Key in Use: This parameter provides the option of automatically adding the last Department Sale that was entered. This function is used at POSTs with a minimal number of keys on the keyboard.

Scanning

Force Department Price Entry of Unknown Items: When selecting Yes, the cashier is prompted to enter Department Name and Price. When selecting No the message Item Not Found is displayed along with the scanned item number. This parameter relates to a separate parameter Print PLU Not Found Slip.

Do not Allow Sales in Tender Mode: This parameter provides the option of disallowing a cashier to perform a sale in Tender mode (i.e., prohibit sales once a tender key is pressed).

Disallow Quantity with Scanning: Selecting Yes entails that when scanning several items of the same type a cashier must scan each item individually. Selecting No enables the cashier to use the Multiply function, then enter the required number of items, and then scan the item.

Maximum Number of Digits for Department Value: This parameter specifies the maximum number of digits including decimal places for a Department Value price (also called Department Sale.), i.e., a price determined at the time of sale.

Maximum Number of Digits for Media Value: This parameter specifies the maximum number of digits including decimal places that can be entered as Tender Value.

MSU Rounding Option: This parameter indicates the rounding method of Multi Sale Units when items are sold separately. Selecting 34 33 33 defines that if three items are sold for \$1.00 the first item is sold for 34¢, and the second and third items are each sold for 33¢.

PLU Includes Check Digits (for POS): This parameter provides the option of specifying that when an item's PLU number is keyed-in manually, a Check Digit will be added to it by the POST, thus the lookup in the Item file will include the Check Digit.

Member Card

Member Card (sub-folder)

Member Card in System: This parameter enables the member card feature in the system.

Check Digit (sub-folder)

Member Card Number Includes Check Digit: This parameter provides the option of including a Check Digit in the Member Card number.

Key-in Member Card Number Without Check Digit: If the parameter, *Member Card Number includes Check Digit* (above), is selected, this parameter provides the option of specifying that a Check Digit is automatically added when Keying-in a Member Card number. When set to Yes, the cashier can key-in Member Card numbers without check digits.

Member Card Check Digit Formula: This parameter enables you to select the formula by which the Check Digit will be determined. Options are Account or UPC.

Member Card Number Must Have a Valid EAN Check Digit:

This parameter provides the option of validating the EAN (European Article Numbering) Check Digit on Member Cards.

Operation (sub-folder)

Allow Scanning of Member Card During a Transaction: This parameter provides the option of allowing cashiers to scan a member card during a transaction without having to first press the preset Member Card key. To enable this feature, the Member Card range must be defined in Card Range Maintenance, as one of the first five ranges. (Refer to *Chapter 2, POS Setup* for details).

Automatically Accept Combined Card as Tender: This parameter provides the option of specifying that once a Member Card is swiped at the beginning of the ticket, a message will be displayed at the end of the ticket, asking whether the customer wishes to use this card as Tender.

Prompt for Member Card When Total Key is Pressed: This parameter prompts a Cashier to request a Member Card when Total key is pressed.

Member Card Prompt: This parameter provides the option to define the text that appears on the Cashier's screen, prompting the Cashier to request a Loyalty Card. The prompt may include up to 20 alphanumeric characters.

Search Member Card Locally: This parameter provides the option to search locally, the member card file within *StoreLine/ISS45* for the member's card number.

Corema: (sub-folder): These parameters relate to Corema, a Data-Warehouse application that stores Loyalty Cards data and with which POSTs communicate regarding Loyalty accounts. The objectives of Loyalty programs are to increase sales and maintain data on consumer purchases.

Length of Secondary ID Number (CCMS only): This parameter specifies the maximum number of digits (0 to 99) allowed for a secondary ID number, an additional unique ID number required, for example, when a customer misplaces their Member Card. The Secondary ID number may be a telephone number or date of birth.

Display Member Name from Corema: This parameter specifies that after a PAN (PAN=Personal Account Number) is sent to Corema and data is received for the specified customer, the customer's name will be displayed.

Corema for Message 3 Not Only for Member Card: This parameter specifies that Message 3 records (containing promotion information) be sent to Corema, even when member card is not presented. When set to Yes and Corema is in use, if the customer is not a Corema customer or a member cardholder, Corema will be sent promotion information for the customer sales transaction. (This feature is currently not implemented in Corema.)

Member Card Name (sub-folder)

Member Card Name in System: This parameter provides the option to enter the name of the Member Card as it appears in the system. The card name may include up to 12 alphanumeric characters.

Display Member Description on Customer Display: This parameter provides the option to display the Member Card Name (description) on the Customer Display once the card is swiped or scanned.

Display Member Description on Cashier Display: This parameter provides the option to display the Member Card Name (description) on the Cashier Display, once the card is swiped or scanned; it will then be printed on the customer receipt.

Member Name (sub-folder)

Display Member Name on Customer Display: This parameter provides the option to display the name of the Member Card holder on the Customer Display once the card is swiped or scanned.

Display Member Name on Cashier Display: This parameter provides the option to display the name of the Member Card holder on the Cashier Display, once the card is swiped or scanned.

Print Member Name on Receipt: This parameter provides the option to print the name of the Member Card holder on the customer receipt.

Redemption (sub-folder)

The parameters in this folder reserved for future development.

Redemption End Date: The parameter defines the redemption end date. This is the last date on which the customer can redeem the award. (Reserved for future development.)

Pending Redemption Start Date: This parameter defines the pending redemption start date. This is the next (pending) redemption start date. (Reserved for future development.)

Redemption Tender: This parameter specifies the tender you would choose to pay customers when redeeming customer points. (Reserved for future development.)

Redemption Option: This parameter displays the options for customer point redemption. When redeeming customer points, the system can be configured to either redeem ALL points or a partial amount. (Reserved for future development.)

Qualified Spend Option: This parameter defines the customer receipt print option for point redemption. Options are:

- None
- Print QF for Member Card Customer Only,
- Print QF on all Receipts
- As Option 1 + Member Card Points Message
- As Option 2 + Member Card Points Message
- Print only TOTAL POINTS (TFS)

(Reserved for future development.)

Point Redemption Equation: The parameter determines the points redemption value, based on the formula, XX Points = Y.YY Value (\$). Points (XX) must be less than or equal to 3200 and Value (\$Y.YY) must be less than or equal to 999999. (Reserved for future development.)

POST User Hooks

User Hooks, also called Custom Links, are user-definable applications that can be activated by the POST before or after certain POST functions. Selecting Yes for a particular Hook specifies that the POST can activate this Hook.

User Hooks in System: This parameter specifies that one or more User Hooks are enabled at the POST.

Debug Mode While in User Hooks: This parameter provides the option of entering Debug Mode when User Hooks are enabled.

Initialization Hook: This parameter specifies that this Hook will be activated during the Initialization of the POST.

Before No-Sale Operation: This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated just before the start of the next transaction, i.e., after the drawer is closed following the previous operation, for example, Sale Transaction, Pickup, Sign-on, etc.

At End of Transaction: This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated at the end of each Sales Transaction, before printing the Trailer message and before sending the Transaction to the Host.

Before Sign-On, Sign-Off, Secure or Wait Mode: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed before Sign-on, Sign-off, Secure mode and Start/Start Wait mode.

After Total Key is Pressed: This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated immediately after the Subtotal key is pressed but before any operation is executed.

After Total Key and Order Promotion Calculation: This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated after pressing the Total key and the balance due is adjusted according to Order Promotion.

Before PLU Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after entering or scanning an item but before the item information is read from the item file.

After PLU Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the item information is read but before the information is processed in any way.

After PLU Sale Completed: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Item Transaction is completed.

Before Department Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after entering a department but before the department information is read from the Item file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Department Sale execution is continued or terminated.

After Department Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the item information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Department Sale execution is continued or terminated.

After Department Completion: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Department Sale is completed.

Before Discount Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after selecting the discount but before the discount information is read from the discount file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Discount execution is continued or terminated.

After Discount Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the discount information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Discount execution is continued or terminated.

After Discount Completion: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Discount is completed.

Before Return Read Hook: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after selecting the return but before the return information is read from the returned file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Return execution is continued or terminated.

After Return Read Hook: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the return information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Return execution is continued or terminated.

Before Tender Read Hook: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after selecting the tender but before the tender information is read from the Tender file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Tender execution is continued or terminated.

After Tender Read Hook: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Tender information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Tender execution is continued or terminated.

After Tender Completion Hook: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after tendering is completed.

After Frequent Shopper Entry Hook: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Frequent Shopper entry but before it is validated. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue or re-enter the Frequent Shopper entry.

Before “Check Signature” Prompt Hook: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just before the Check Signature prompt. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue or terminate the Tender execution.

User Hook Functions Hook: This parameter enables the Hook that executes the various User Hook functions. The Hook function must first be added into the keyboard layout or into the POST menu. Using a Hook function will result in execution of this Hook with the Hook function number.

Before BROM Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just before promotion information is read from the database.

After BROM Read: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just after promotion information is read from the database.

After BROM Reduction Completion: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after Reduction is completed. Only Reductions have an after Completion Hook because Promotions and Offers are executed as a special PLU sale, therefore, the PLU After Completion Hook covers this purpose.

Before Maintenance Execution: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just before every maintenance execution. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue execution of this maintenance (OK/BAD).

After Maintenance Execution: This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just after every maintenance execution.

Restricted Sale\Birthday Sale\Time Restriction

These parameters define restrictions on sales of items or on sales encompassing entire departments. The restrictions may apply to customer age, day of week or time of day.

Restricted Sale/Birthday Feature in Use: This parameter provides the option to activate the Restricted Sale/Birthday feature in the store. A restricted sale item means the item can only be purchased at a particular time of day (e.g., beer, wine). A birthday validation means the item can only be purchased by an individual who meets the minimum age requirement.

Prompt to Accept Birthday: This parameter provides the option to prompt the cashier to enter the customer's birthday on restricted sales items. When set to Yes, the cashier will be prompted to enter the customer's birth date (mmddyy) on the first item purchased from the associated Restriction Layout. The system will automatically calculate the date to determine if it satisfies the minimum age requirement.

CC for Bypassing Birthday Prompt: This parameter specifies the Control Check to display if the cashier does not enter a birth date for birthday validation.

Birthday Validation Print Option: This parameter specifies whether the birth date is printed on the customer receipt, or audit tape or both.

Restriction Layout 1 (sub-folder): These parameters define restriction for Layout 1, and include minimum age requirement, days of week, time of day and Control Checks for these restrictions. This layout may be linked to items or departments. (The system supports up to 10 Restriction Layouts.)

Department Number 1: This parameter specifies the department to which restrictions apply, as defined in Layout 1.

Set Number 1-3: This parameter defines a set of Day and Time restrictions that apply to this layout.

CC Restricted Sale 1: This parameter specifies the Control Check that is prompted when a Cashier attempts to sell an item from the specified department and within the restricted days and times defined for this layout.

Age Required 1: This parameter specifies the minimum age requirement for purchasing items defined in Layout 1.

CC Birthday Val 1: This parameter specifies the Control Check that is displayed when the birth date that is entered shows an age below the minimum age requirement.

Description 1: This parameter provides the option to define the name of the Restriction Layout. This description appears on the Restriction Layout dropdown list in PLU Maintenance.

Restricted Sale – Time Set 1 (sub-folder): These parameters define the day(s) of the week and the start/stop times to apply the restricted sale layouts (parameters), defined above. The times entered should reflect the actual timeframes that the purchases are allowed. The times must be entered in a 24-hour format (i.e., noon = 12:00 and midnight = 24:00). The system will support up to 3 Restricted Sale Time Sets (Day and Time restrictions).

Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Start - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the Start time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Stop - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the End time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Start - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Stop - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Friday Start - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the Start time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Friday Stop - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the End time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Friday Start - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Friday Stop - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Saturday Start - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the Start time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Saturday Stop - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the End time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Saturday - Start - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Saturday Stop - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Sunday Start - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the Start time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Sunday Stop - 1 Set 1: This parameter specifies the End time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Sunday Start - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Sunday Stop - 2 Set 1: This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

Restricted Sale Time Set Days Set 1: This parameter specifies the days of the week for which Restricted Sales Time Set 1 is in effect.

Secure\Sign-Off\Sign-On

These parameters are related to various requirements and actions at the POST when Signing-on and Signing-off.

The Sign On/Off parameters enable you to define the functions related to cashier sign on or sign off, for example, whether the cashier must enter a password when they sign on. The Secure parameters enable you to define the period of time, during which the cashier has not used the keyboard, which may elapse before secure mode will be automatically activated. In addition, you can define other functions that will occur when secure mode is entered automatically.

Password Required at Sign-On: This parameter provides the option of requiring the entering of a password when Signing-on at the POST.

Change Password Allowed at Sign-On: This parameter provides the option of prompting the cashier at Sign-on to change password. The Cashier can bypass the password change by pressing *Enter*.

Automatic Open Drawer at Sign-On: This parameter provides the option of automatic opening of the Cash Drawer when Signing-On.

Password Allowed at Sign-Off: This parameter provides the option of prompting the cashier at Sign-off to change password. The Cashier can bypass the password change by pressing *Enter*.

Automatic Open Drawer at Sign-Off: This parameter provides the option of automatically opening the Cash Drawer when Signing-Off.

Password Required at Sign-Off: This parameter provides the option of requiring the entering of a password when Signing-off.

Delay (In Seconds) For Open Drawer Alarm After Sign-Off: This parameter indicates how long, in seconds, after the Cash Drawer has been open, an alarm will go off.

Report Required At Sign-Off: This parameter specifies what is printed on the receipt when a Cashier is Signing-off. Options are:

- No report printed: No report is generated.
- Print X-Read on receipt: A Cashier X-Read receipt will print as part of the sign-off process. A X-Read receipt details the types, number, total values and the tender types of transactions the cashier performed. It also displays the number and total values of transactions made by each tender.
- Print Name & Number of Receipt: The receipt prints only the cashier's name and number.

- **X-Read on Audit:** A Cashier X-Read receipt (described above) will print on the audit receipt as part of the sign-off process (if Audit printer exists).
- **Print Name & Number of Audit:** The audit receipt displays only the cashier's name and number.

Number of Minutes Before Automatic Secure Mode: This parameter indicates the number of minutes when no key was pressed, after which the POST will be locked. The type of Locking method is defined in the *Automatic Secure Mode/Automatic Sign-Off* parameter, listed below.

Automatic Secure Mode/Automatic Sign-Off: This parameter provides the option of changing the POST to Secure mode or to Sign-off when no key is pressed for a predefined number of minutes as defined in *Number of Minutes Before Automatic Secure Mode* parameter.

Password Required With Cashier Bar-Code: This parameter provides the option for a Cashier when Signing-on to scan a Cashier's card with a unique Bar-code.

Number of Days for Password Change: This parameter provides the option of indicating the number of days since the last POST Sign-on password was changed, after which a message will be displayed prompting for password change. When selecting Yes, the new password must differ from the old password. (Note: The parameter *Change password allowed at Sign-on* must be set to Yes.)

Omit Manual Secure Mode Prompt: This parameter provides the option to omit the Secure Mode Yes/No prompt when manually securing the POS terminal.

Enable the Scanner in Sign-Off Mode: This parameter provides the option to enable the scanner to read a bar-code label in sign-off mode. It is recommended to select this parameter in stores that use scannable cashier/manager cards for signing-on/off POS terminals.

System Integrity

This is the procedure of comparing total EOD sums in the Office QDX files with EOD sums in the POST QDX files. When discrepancies are located the POST refreshes, i.e., reloads from the server, and POST files are adjusted. These parameters define how the System Integrity option must perform.

System Integrity in System: This parameter provides the option to enable the System Integrity feature in the system.

Delay after File Load (Other than PLU) was Suspended (Seconds): This parameter specifies the number of seconds to wait before data refresh is resumed (for all files apart from the PLU file) after data refresh is suspended by the cashier.

Number of Days to Prompt before Checksum: This parameter is reserved for future development.

Data Refresh – Foreground Fast PLU Load (sub-folder)**Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Prompt**

Required: This parameter provides the option to issue a cashier prompt prior to initiating a PLU Fast Foreground Load. A *foreground* load will automatically occur if the Keyboard is not touched for 'n' seconds. A *foreground* load is fast, *background* is slow.

Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Protection (Zip):

This parameter provides the option to zip the POS terminal's PLU file prior to starting a *fast block load*. This could take fifteen minutes on 130,000 active PLUs. If loading fails, the zipped file will be reused again.

Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Prompt

Frequency (Tickets): This parameter specifies how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in *tickets* (sales transactions). The available range is 0 to 99.

Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Prompt

Frequency (Seconds): This parameter specifies how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in *seconds*.

Slow \ Fast PLU Load (sub-folder)

Data FAST/SLOW Foreground PLU Load Threshold

Percentage %: This parameter specifies a required percentage threshold, that if exceeded, a fast block load is initiated. The POS terminal checks active records and compares with the MFS. If a difference of 'n' percentage is found, the PLU file is zipped and a fast block load starts.

If a cashier is logged on, a prompt (see parameter, *Data Refresh-PLU FAST Foreground load prompt*, above) recommends to the cashier to perform a fast block load. You can allow the cashier to override this prompt.

If the checksum fails, and the difference is less than the percentage you specify, the system will use the slow (foreground) load, and then switch between foreground and background depending on keyboard activity. If the difference is greater than the specified percentage, the fast load will be used

Data SLOW – PLU Foreground/Background Switch Delay

(Seconds): Enter the number of seconds of keyboard activity and inactivity, before a file load switches from foreground to background (and vice versa).

Bypass PLU FAST Foreground Message – if Keyboard not

Touched (Seconds): This parameter specifies the number of seconds of keyboard inactivity, after which the prompt begins to display again.

WIC

These parameters relate to WIC (=Women, Infants, Children). WIC checks can be used only by women with children and are considered a type of Tender. A customer must declare their intention to pay with WIC checks before the first item is entered.

WIC Prompt Options: This parameter provides the option of selecting additional data that the cashier will be prompted to enter when starting a WIC transaction.

WIC Print Options: This parameter provides the option of specifying which WIC-related data will be printed on the receipt.

CC for Exceeding WIC Check Amount: This Control Check is prompted at the time of sale when the total transaction amount is higher than the WIC check amount declared at the beginning of the transaction.

CC for Exceeding WIC Expiry Date: This Control Check is prompted when the date of the WIC check has expired.

CC for Bypassing WIC Check Amount: This Control Check enables authorized personnel to bypass the message that is displayed indicating that the WIC check amount must be entered.

CC for Bypassing WIC Expiry Date: This Control Check enables authorized personnel to bypass the message that is displayed indicating that the WIC Check date must be entered.

WIC Issue Date: This parameter specifies the method of validating a WIC check, either by Issue Date or Expiry Date. When selecting Issue Date the Validity period must be specified in WIC Validity Period parameter.

WIC Validity Period (In Days): This parameter specifies the number of days for which the WIC check is valid. This parameter takes effect only when selecting Issue Date in the WIC Issue Date parameter.

Allow WIC Tender Without Validation: This parameter enables authorized personnel to accept WIC Checks as ordinary Tender without any validation procedures. When Yes is selected, all the above WIC-related parameters are nullified.

Maximum Number of WIC Items to Print on Back of Check: This parameter specifies the maximum number of purchased WIC items to print on the back of a WIC check.

Card Program

Card Programs are community fundraising projects in which the store participates. The customer selects a preferred fundraising project, to which, for each transaction the store may donate a certain amount/percentage of the purchase sum.

Card Program (Community Partner) Y/N: This parameter provides the option to activate the card program feature in the store.

UPC Barcode: This parameter specifies the first two digits in a UPC of a Community Partner program barcode.

Location of Program in Card: This parameter specifies the location of the selected program's code within the code that appears on the card.

Monetary

Charge Posting

These parameters relate to charging, i.e., when the store allows a customer to defer payment.

General (sub-folder)

In House Account Type: This parameter specifies the store's charging method. Charge Posting specifies a beginning sum from which customer purchases are deducted (i.e., a credit account in which the shopper establishes a credit balance). Customer Account defines customer purchases as cumulative, from 0 until the maximum predefined sum (i.e., a debit account, the outstanding balance of which is paid by the customer on a monthly basis).

Number of Digits for Account Number: This parameter enables the specifying of the maximum number of digits defined for an Account Number. Upon validation any different number of digits will prompt an error message.

Check Tender Daily Limits on Amount: This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum amount allowed for a customer to charge per day.

Check Tender Daily Limits on Account: This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum number of charges allowed for a customer per day. (Note: This field is currently not enabled.)

No Check Digit on Account Number: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Customer Account does not include a Check Digit.

Related Account Number (sub-folder)

Log Related Account in Transaction File: This parameter provides the option of specifying that in transactions that include a customer charge, the POST automatically logs the account number into the Transaction file.

Print Related Account on Receipt: This parameter specifies that in transactions that include a customer charge, the customer account number will be printed on the receipt.

Related Account Template: This parameter defines the name of the template that will be printed when selecting Yes in the *Print Related Account on Receipt* parameter. (Note: The print template name must be written in capital letters and must be identical to the name on the DOS template file, to ensure that the text is displayed on the POS terminal and printed on the receipt.)

Tender (sub-folder)

Charge Payment Tender: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Tender Type for Customer Charge accounts as it will appear on the receipt and track in the reports.

Reversal Charge Payment Tender: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Tender Type for reversing transactions that have been processed on Customer Charge accounts.

Coupons

UPC5 coupons are manufacturer's coupons in which the first 5 digits are the Manufacturer's number, the following 3 digits comprise the Family Code, and the last digits are the Price Code.

Level of Smart TV Coupon: This parameter defines the necessary Validation level when purchasing item with a Smart TV coupon. Validation levels include: None; Validating the 5-digit Manufacturer number; Validating the 3-digit family number, or the first digit of the family number.

Level of UPC5 Validation: This parameter defines the necessary Validation level when an item is purchased with a UPC5 coupon. Validation types include: None; Validating the 5-digit Manufacturer number; Validating the 3-digit family number, or the first digit of the family number.

Bonus Coupon (sub-folder)

An extra value coupon offered by a store. The calculation of a Bonus Coupon is based on a Manufacturer's Coupon (vendor coupon) that receives an extra added value. The combined value of a Manufacturer's Coupon with the Bonus Coupon may not exceed the value of the item.

Range1 (sub-folder): The system supports up to 4 different ranges for Bonus Coupons (Range 1-4). Each range supports the parameters listed below.

Coupon Multiplier Range1: This parameter specifies the number by which the vendor coupon is multiplied. For example, if vendor coupons should be doubled, enter 2.

Add Amount Range 1: This parameter provides the option of adding an additional bonus amount, above and beyond the 'ceiling amount'.

Minimum Order Range 1: This parameter specifies the minimum purchase required (Order Total) for a Bonus Value to apply.

Tender Range 1: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Tender type defined for this coupon, as it will appear on the receipt and in the reports.

Ceiling Amount Range 1: This parameter specifies the maximum value allowed when combining the value of the Manufacturer's Coupon with the value of the Bonus Coupon.

Days of Week Range 1: This parameter provides the option of selecting the day(s) of the week on which the Bonus Coupon Range will apply.

Coupon Value From-To Range 1: This parameter provides the option of specifying the range of the minimum and maximum Manufacturer's Coupon values, defined as Range 1 coupons.

General (sub-folder)

Give Bonus Coupon on Discountable items only: This parameter provides the option of issuing bonus coupons only on items that are defined as discountable in the PLU Maintenance parameters. This is possible only when the Prohibit Discount flag in the PLU record is not checked. (Note: If this parameter is set to No, bonus coupons apply to any item.)

Allow Coupons in Departments With No Sales In Order: This parameter provides the option of accepting vendor coupons in a specific department even though no items from that department were purchased in the order. The first department credited with the coupon will be the default department for additional vendor coupons processed with no associated items purchased.

No Keyboard Sound for Coupons Without Department or

Price: This parameter specifies that when processing a coupon, for which no price or department are defined, a message is displayed informing that a price or department must be entered. This message will not be accompanied by a keyboard sound (beep). When this parameter is set to No, the message displayed will be accompanied by a beeping sound from the keyboard.

Force Zeros on Coupon Number: This parameter provides the option to force zeros on the coupon number. If you want to force zeros on coupons, specify the number of digits in this parameter. (This parameter is currently not supported)

CC To Allow Coupons To Bring Subtotal < 0: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to allow a negative subtotal of a ticket when the value of coupons tendered exceeds the total of the balance due.

CC To Allow More Coupons Than Item: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to allow a transaction, in which the number of coupons tendered exceeds the total number of items in the ticket.

CC To Restrict Redemption of EAN 99 Coupons Out of Sale:

This parameter monitors authorized personnel to redeem an EAN 99 coupon outside of an order, i.e., give customer cash in return for a coupon.

CC To Allow Coupons as First Item In Order: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to give a customer money from the Cash Drawer in a Coupon Only Order, i.e., a ticket in which the first item is a coupon. (Note: If the first item in the ticket is coupon, only coupon entries are allowed in a transaction.)

Maximum Coupon Face Value: This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum value allowed for a coupon.

Markdown Department for UPC5 Coupon: This parameter specifies the department in which any differences between the coupon value and the scanned item's sum will be registered. (This parameter is relevant when the Level of UPC5 Validation parameter is set to None, i.e., UPC5 is not tender, but rather Order Promotion).

No CDV Check on Item Scan/Enter Key: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the POST will not perform Check Digit Validation on scanned or keyed-in items.

No UPC5 in System: This parameter enables the option of defining UPC5 coupons in the system. Selecting No will define a UPC5 coupon as a regular item.

Enable Double (Bonus) Coupon To: This parameter provides the option of specifying who is eligible for Double Bonus Coupons. Options are:

- All
- Members
- Non-Members
- Disable All

Enable Triple Coupon To: This parameter provides the option of selecting who is eligible for Triple Bonus Coupons. Options are:

- All
- Members
- Non-Members
- Disable All

Use UPC5 Coupon Attached Item Description: This parameter provides the option of specifying that a description of the item that was purchased with a coupon will be printed on the receipt, when the coupon is processed. Selecting 'No' will print only the Tender type.

Maximum of Triple Coupons Per Ticket: This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum number of Triple Coupons allowed per ticket.

Minimum Amount for Minimum Purchase Control Check: This parameter provides the option of specifying the minimum purchase amount required when using UPC5 coupons, below which the Control Check for Minimum Purchase is prompted.

Smart Card Coupon In System: This parameter provides the option of defining a Smart Card Coupon in the system. This parameter is currently not supported.

PLU for Special PLU-Coupon Discount: This parameter provides the option of allowing a percentage off the sales order total, via a PLU entry, using the vendor coupon logic, which does not reduce sales and tax. This parameter specifies the PLU number which will trigger the order discount. (Note: When creating the PLU number for this option, the PLU record should be setup as a vendor coupon.)

Percentage for Special PLU Coupon Discount: This parameter, in association with the parameter, *Percentage for Special Coupon Discount*, defines the percentage for the total order discount.

EAN99 Coupon or UPC99 Vender Coupon in System: This parameter provides the option of defining the type of coupons in the system. UPC99 is the same as UPC5, but without Bonus Coupon capability.

Disable Promotion Best Deal: This parameter is currently not supported.

Coupon Required Number to Trigger After Total: This parameter provides the option to specify a coupon number (for example, coupon 9999999901171) in this field that will trigger a member promotion after the Total key is pressed. The coupon number can be linked to individual promotions (refer to *Office User's Guide, Promotion Management*, for details).

Maximum Coupons in Ticket: This parameter specifies the maximum number of coupons in a sales transaction.

CC for Maximum Coupons in Ticket: This parameter specifies the Control Check to display when the maximum number of coupons in the sales transaction has been exceeded.

Printing (sub-folder)

Print Coupons Report on Ticket: This parameter provides the option of printing a coupon summary on the ticket that includes all coupons (store, vendor and bonus) that were printed for this ticket.

Coupon Printing in Use: This parameter enables the Coupon Printing feature. This option enables user to define and design store coupons to be printed for each customer transaction based on items in the order.

Maximum Number of Coupons to Print Per Transaction:
When *Coupon Printing in Use* parameter is set to Yes, this parameter specifies the maximum number of coupons to print per sales transaction.

Minimum Purchase Amount Required: This parameter specifies the minimum transaction total required to initiate coupon printing.

Control Check for Minimum Purchase: This parameter specifies the Control Check to display when the transaction total is less than the predefined minimum purchase amount for generating a printed coupon.

Accountability (sub-folder)

These parameters specify the Tender type of each coupon type as defined in Tender Maintenance.

Tenders: Vendor Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Vendor Coupons.

Tenders: Store Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Store Coupons.

Tenders: Bonus Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Bonus Coupons.

Tenders: UPC5 Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for UPC5 Coupons.

Tenders: EAN99 Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for EAN99 Coupons.

Triple Tender: This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Triple Coupons.

Tenders: Smart Card: This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Smart Card Coupons. This parameter is currently not supported.

Department Netted (sub-folder): These parameters specify whether the coupon sum is deducted from the total Department sales amount.

Department Netted on Vendor Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Vendor Coupon sum be deducted from the total sales amount of the relevant department.

Department Netted on Store Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Store Coupon sum be deducted when calculating the total sales amount of the relevant department.

Department Netted on Bonus Coupon: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Bonus Coupon sum be deducted when calculating the total sales amount of the relevant department.

Tax Forgive (sub-folder): These parameters define whether taxes are charged on the entire sum of an item including on the coupon sum.

Forgive Tax on Vendor Coupon: This parameter enables to select the tax type that the customer will not be charged on the coupon sum when paying with a Vendor Coupon. If no taxes are selected the customer will be charged the usual tax.

Forgive Tax on Store Coupon: This parameter enables to select the type of tax that the customer will not be charged on the coupon sum, when paying with a Store Coupon. If no taxes are selected, the customer will be charged the usual tax.

Forgive Tax on Bonus Coupon: This parameter enables to select the type of tax that the customer will not be charged, when paying with a Bonus Coupon. If no taxes are selected, the customer will be charged the usual tax.

Discount

These parameters relate to minimum purchase amount for receiving a discount. Discount is a function defined as a percentage of the price.

Minimum Purchase Amount for Transaction Discount: This parameter provides the option of specifying the minimum purchase amount that entitles a customer to a discount.

Control Check for Not Meeting Minimum Purchase for Discount: This parameter monitors authorized personnel to give a discount when the predefined minimum purchase amount is not met.

Member Promotion

These Member Promotion Parameters enable you to define various requirements and descriptions for Member Promotions.

Enhanced Promotion Description

This parameter defines the enhanced promotion description, for example 'Express Savings'. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt.

Total Enhanced Promotion Description: This parameter defines the total enhanced promotion description. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt at the end of the transaction.

Total for Member Promotion Description: This parameter defines the total member promotion description. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt at the end of the transaction.

Report Member Promotions as Tender: This parameter provides the option to track and report Member Promotions as tender.

Tender for Member Promotions: This parameter provides the option to select the Tender Type for Member Promotions. If parameter *Report Member Promotions as Tender* is set to Yes, select the appropriate tender from the dropdown list.

Member Promotion Affects Department Promotions: This parameter provides the option to track promotions at department level rather than at PLU level.

Default Promotion on System Non-Netted Discount: This parameter defines the default behavior of non-netted promotions. When set to Yes, promotional discounts will not reduce department sales. When set to No, promotional discounts will be subtracted from department sales. This default value will display on the screen of the promotion maintenance application. When creating promotions, the user has the ability to override the default value.

Default Frequent Shopper on System Non-Netted Discount: This parameter defines how frequent shopper discounts will be reported. When set to Yes, frequent shopper discounts will not reduce department sales. When set to No, frequent shopper discounts will be subtracted from department sales. The Non-netted amount will be tracked in the Department Report and the Expanded Department Report.

Allow Zero Price Item to Trigger a Promotion: This parameter provides the option to allow a zero-priced PLU item, when entered at the POS terminal, to trigger a customer promotion.

Food Stamps

Food Stamps are considered as a tender type. Depending on state regulations, food stamps may have tax-exempt status. In addition, it may be against regulations to give change when payment is made with Food Stamps. These parameters define the functions that can be performed when Food Stamps are tendered.

Food Stamps Tender: This parameter specifies the Tender type linked with Food Stamps. Choices are EBT Food Stamps or Manual EBT Food Stamps.

Any Food Stamps Eligible Items Paid With Food Stamps is Tax Forgiven: This Parameter provides the option of specifying that when purchasing items defined as Food Stamps Eligible Items (a PLU parameter) and when paying with Food Stamps, a customer will not be charged tax on the items.

Any Food Stamps Tender Forgive Tax on All Food Stamps Eligible Items (NJ): This parameter provides the option of specifying that no tax will be charged for Food Stamp Eligible Items when any portion of the transaction is tendered with Food Stamps. (This law was first implemented in the state of New Jersey).

Allow Non Whole-Dollar Food Stamps: This parameter provides the option of accepting Food Stamps that have a non whole-dollar value, for example \$ 5.79.

Allow Non Whole Dollar EBT Food Stamps: This parameter provides the option of accepting Food Stamps in the form of EBT, a type of debit card used for Food Stamps that may have a non whole-dollar value, for example \$ 25.97. No change is issued on these transactions.

Print Food Stamps Subtotal on Receipt if Food Stamps

Tendered: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Food Stamp Subtotal will print on the Receipt if Food Stamps are tendered.

Limit Food Stamps Eligible to Balance Due: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the total value of Food Stamps that a customer uses in a ticket cannot exceed the total ticket balance.

Forgive Tax on Vender Coupons if Food Stamps Tendered:

This parameter provides the option of specifying that a customer will not be charged tax on vendor coupons for items purchased with Food Stamps.

Display Food Stamps Total After Stamps Tender: This parameter provides the option of displaying the amount tendered in Food Stamps on the customer display. When set to Yes, a food stamp sub-total (instead of the amount of Food Stamps tendered) will display on the customer display, when Food Stamps are tendered. When set to No, the amount paid in Food Stamps will display on the customer display, when Food Stamps are tendered.

Give Cash Change when Vendor Coupons are used: This parameter provides the option of giving cash change, instead of food stamp change, for the value of vendor coupons tendered in a food stamp order.

Frequent Shopper

A Frequent Shopper program is a basic form of Loyalty Program comprising a limited number of options. The program operates by simply validating the number on the card and accordingly generating a reduced price.

Frequent Shopper Range: From To: This parameter enables you to define the range of Frequent Shopper card numbers. Each card number can include up to 13 digits. Only card numbers within the specified range will be recognized as Frequent Shopper cards by the system.

Freq. Shopper Merchandising Template to Print at End of Transaction: This parameter identifies the merchandising template to print at the end of the sales transaction on the customer receipt.

Allow Frequent Shopper Discount Higher than Item Price: This parameter provides the option of allowing Frequent Shoppers to receive a Discount value that is higher than the price of the item. If set to Yes, the shopper would get 'cash back', in addition to receiving the item for which they would not be charged. Usually this offer would be dependent on the shopper meeting a minimum purchase requirement.

Use Frequent Shopper Number for Check Tender Account

Number: This parameter specifies that the Customer's Frequent Shopper number will be used as the account number for processing checks. If a customer elects to pay by check, the account number does not have to be re-entered. If this parameter is set to No, the POS terminal will prompt for an account number when a check is tendered.

Frequent Shopper Merchandising Feature: This parameter defines the display format of Frequent Shopper discounted items on the printed receipt. Options are:

- **None:** No information will appear on the ticket next to each discounted item. The discounts will only be displayed as a subtotal at the end of the receipt.
- **Character:** A character, for example, an asterisk (*), will appear next to each discounted item.
- **Text Line:** A text line will appear next to each discounted item.
- **Text Line & Savings:** A text line and the value of the discount will appear next to each discounted item, for example, 'You saved \$ 1.00'.

Frequent Shopper Minimum Purchase Amount: This parameter provides the option of specifying a minimum purchase amount required for Frequent Shoppers, to be eligible for Frequent Shopper discounts.

Control Check for Not Meeting Minimum Purchase for

Frequent Shopper: This parameter enables an authorized person, for example, a supervisor, to give Frequent Shopper discounts, without the shopper having fulfilled the minimum purchase requirements.

Control Check to Bypass Frequent Shopper: This parameter enables authorized personnel to give Frequent Shopper discounts without a Frequent Shopper card number having been entered.

Frequent Shopper Discount to Be Applied Per Item Price

(MSU): This parameter provides the option of specifying the method of calculating discounted Multiple Selling Unit (MSU) items if sold separately. When this parameter is set to Yes, the Frequent Shopper discount is applied per item, for MSU items. For example, if an MSU consists of two items for \$10, the single item price would be \$5. The Frequent Shopper discount is applied to the single item. Therefore, if the Frequent Shopper discount is \$2, the single item price is \$3.

When set to No, the Frequent Shopper discount is applied to the total MSU price of the combined items and then divided by the number of items to calculate the individual item's price. For example, if an MSU consist of two items for \$10, and the Frequent Shopper discount is \$2, the MSU would then be two items for \$8 and the single item price would be \$4.

Use Frequent Shopper Number as Member Card Number:

This parameter provides the option of combining the features of a Frequent Shopper card with a Member card.

Do Not Prompt for Frequent Shopper at the Beginning of a

Ticket: This parameter provides the option to specify not to prompt for a Frequent Shopper card at the beginning of a ticket, thus the transaction will be registered as a normal transaction.

Apply Frequent Shopper Discount Also With Any Manual

Price Entries: This parameter provides the option to specify that when manually entering item prices the Frequent Shopper Discount will be entered as well.

Frequent Shopper Description: This parameter defines the name of the Frequent Shopper program.

Frequent Shopper Mode (sub-folder)

Frequent Shopper Type: This parameter defines the type of Frequent Shopper program that is active in the system. Options are:

- None: No Frequent Shopper features are available.
- Regular: The Frequent Shopper card number must be entered (by swiping, scanning, or keying) at the start of the ticket in order for Frequent Shopper discounts to be given.
- Enhanced Type 1: The discount for eligible items is displayed only at the end of the ticket.
- Enhanced Type 2: The Frequent Shopper card number can be entered at any time during the order. However, the discount will only display at the end of the ticket. If the card is number is entered at the beginning of the ticket, the ticket displays the discount for each eligible item.

Cards

Times to Swipe Card Before Manual Entry: This parameter specifies the number of times a credit card is swiped but the POST fails to read the card number, after which the Cashier can enter the number manually.

Seconds Before Credit Card Number Can Be Entered: This parameter specifies the number of seconds once a credit card is swiped several times but the POST fails to read the card number, after which a message is displayed prompting the Cashier to enter the number manually.

Suppress Fly Buys Check Digit on Receipt and Transaction: Fly-Buy is a card that enables the customer to accrue flying mileage with each purchase. Mileage is earned based on purchase amount. This parameter provides the option to suppress printing of Check Digit on receipt and transaction.

Key-In Fly Buys Number Without Check Digit: This parameter provides the option of defining that the Fly-Buy card is keyed-in without a Check Digit.

Cost Plus

Cost Plus is a method for determining the price of an item, as a function of the Cost and a predefined percentage of profit for the Store.

Cost Plus in System: This parameter provides the option to specify that Cost Plus is defined in the system.

Cost Plus Taxable Surcharge Department: This parameter provides the option to specify the department to which a taxable surcharge will be added.

Cost Plus Non-Taxable Surcharge Department: This parameter provides the option to specify the department to which a non-taxable surcharge will be added.

Tender

Allow Foreign Currency Change: This parameter provides the option to allow foreign currency change to be given to a customer. For a transaction that has been over-tendered or partially tendered with one or more foreign currency tenders, the cashier has the option to give change in host currency (cash) or as any foreign currency in the transaction.

Void Tender at Check Signature Allowed: This parameter provides the option to void a tender during tendering with 'check signature'. When set to Yes, a tender can be voided when the 'check signature' prompt displays on the POS terminal. ('Check Signature' displays if the appropriate parameter in the tender record is checked.) When parameter is set to No, the cashier is not allowed to void a tender during tendering with 'check signature'.

Second Tender for Payouts Receipts: This parameter specifies an (optional) second tender for receipts and payouts.

Barcode Tender (sub-folder)

These parameters relate to Coinstar machines that take customers' coins and generate a bar-coded voucher for that amount, which can be used as tender.

Barcode Tender Active: This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Coinstar barcoded tender is an active tender in the system. The Coinstar barcode is IAN2 code '29' and takes the shape of 29-XXXXX-00000-C, where 'XXXXX' represents a transaction number assigned by the Coinstar system and '00000' is the value of the tender.

Barcoded Tender Value Length: This parameter specifies the number of digits that reflect the amount of a Coinstar voucher. The location of the first digit is determined in the parameter Barcoded Tender Value Location. (Coinstar Value Length = 5)

Barcoded Tender Value Location: This parameter specifies the location of the first digit of the tender amount, within the barcode of a Coinstar voucher. (Coinstar Value Location = 8)

Barcoded Tender Number: This parameter specifies the tender type defined in the system (under Tender Maintenance) for Coinstar vouchers.

Barcoded Tender Prefix: This parameter specifies the prefix code number for the tender type defined in the system for Coinstar vouchers. (Coinstar Tender Prefix = 29)

Delete Record from ECCA Once Period Length has Expired:

This parameter provides the option of automatically deleting the barcoded tender record from the ECCA file once the period length has expired. The ECCA utility retains the Coinstar voucher number (XXXXXX) for at least 30 days and when a new Coinstar voucher is processed, it is validated against the file to determine if it has previously been 'cashed', similar to a bad check file. Automatic deletion of Barcoded Tender ECCA accounts will occur during the End of Day process.

Rounding

This option is used to define the rules for rounding up or down, the balance due by the customer. This influences the change amount due to the customer. Rounding is normally, but not necessarily, applied to cash tenders.

Rounding on Total: This parameter enables the Rounding on Total option in the store.

Tender for Rounding: This parameter specifies the tender for rounding (usually cash).

Item Line and Ticket Total Rounding Method: This parameter specifies the rounding method per item and ticket total. Rounding options are 'no rounding', 'to the unit' or 'to the tenth'.

Suffix Rounding: This is a multi-parameter that specifies the rounding value for each cent value. For example, for one cent, you may decide to round *down* to zero. In this case, enter 0 under suffix 1. To round *up* from 4 cents to 5 cents, enter 5 under suffix 4.

Tax

Omit Tax ID Number Prompt for Tax Exempt: This parameter provides the option to omit the 'Enter Tax Exempt No.' cashier prompt on a tax-exempt order. When set to Yes, the prompt will not display. When set to No, the 'Enter Tax Exempt No.' prompt will display and the customer tax-exempt number entered will print on the customer receipt.

Number of Tax Rates to Accumulate Amounts: This parameter specifies the number of tax rates (up to 8) to be tracked in the system. If 0, no tax rates are accumulated, except for tax rate 1. If 8, all taxes with a tax rate are accumulated. If 1-7, the first 7 rates will be used to accumulate taxable amounts.

Display Individual Tax on Receipt: This parameter provides the options to print tax, by individual rate, on the customer receipt. When set to Yes, the total taxable amount and total tax due, by individual rate, will print on the customer receipt. When set to No, the 'Total Tax' amount will print on the customer receipt.

Allow Cashier to Select Specific Tax for Tax Exempt: This parameter provides the option to allow the cashier to select the specific tax rate to be exempted.

Allow Cashier to Select Specific Tax for Tax Reversal: This parameter provides the option to allow the cashier to select the specific tax rate that is to be reversed.

Don't Print Tax Report if Tax is Zero: This parameter provides the option of not printing the tax report (e.g., 'SUB-TOTAL', 'TOTAL TAX', and 'TOTAL') on the customer receipt if tax is zero.

Tax Reversal (sub-folder)

Tax Rates for Tax Reversal: This parameter provides the option to specify the individual tax rates (rates 1 to 8) eligible for tax reversal.

Trading Stamps

Trading Stamps in System: This parameter provides the option to activate the Trading Stamp feature in the system.

Purchase Amount Required for One Stamp: This parameter specifies the purchase amount necessary to award one stamp. If this specified amount is reached, a stamp will be awarded to the customer. (The amount must be equal to or less than 999.99). For example, if you specify \$ 5.00 and a customer's purchase total is \$10.00, then the system awards 2 stamps.

Multiple Calculation Method: This parameter provides the option to specify the appropriate method to award multiples of trading stamps. Options are 'None', 'Department Eligible Total' or 'By Stamps Earned'. The POS terminal multiplies the stamps already awarded, by the multiplication factor according to the method selected here.

Before Vendor Coupons: This parameter provides the option to award trading stamps based on the purchase total, before or after vendor coupons.

Before Bonus Coupons: This parameter provides the option to award trading stamps based on the purchase total, before or after bonus coupons.

Before Store Coupons: This parameter provides the option to award trading stamps based on the purchase total, before or after store coupons.

Template Name (Text) to Print on Receipt: This parameter specifies the name of the template (previously defined) to print the required 'stamps earned' message on the customer receipt.

Display/Print Points with Decimal Point: This parameter provides the option to display and print points with a decimal point. When set to Yes, the trading stamps will display and print with a decimal point.

Do not Display Message on Operator Screen: This parameter provides the option to avoid displaying the Trading Stamp message on the Cashier display. When set to Yes, the Trading Stamp message will not display on the Cashier screen.

Report

Subtract Cashier Declarations from POS Reports: The parameter provides the option to deduct cashier declarations from media totals on the Over Limit Cashier/POS Report. This report shows which cashiers/POS have more cash (media) in their drawer than the amount specified in the *Cash in Drawer Limit* parameter.

When the *Subtract Cashier Declarations for POS Reports* parameter is set to Yes, cashier declarations are subtracted from the media totals, when calculating the actual amount in the cash drawer for this report.

Number of Decimal Places to Show: This parameter is currently not supported.

Gift Certificates

Voucher (sub-folder)

The Gift Vouchers option enables the shopper to purchase Gift Vouchers at the POS terminal and to assign them a redemption quantity, and then to use them as a normal tender at POS terminal. Gift Vouchers will be printed with their amount at purchase time, and then at redemption time will be printed again for cancellation.

Gift Voucher Template Number: This parameter specifies the template number for generating and printing the gift voucher at the POS terminal. Valid template range is 0 to 99.

Gift Voucher Tender Number for Club Card: This parameter specifies the Tender Type for Gift Voucher redemption.

Gift Voucher in System: This parameter provides the option to enable Gift Vouchers in the System.

Gift Voucher Range: From/To: This parameter enables the user to define the range of valid Gift Voucher numbers. Each voucher can include up to 13 digits (EAN code starting with 24 and module 10 check digit).

Card (sub-folder)

Gift Card Min Amount Value: This parameter specifies the minimum value for a gift card. The valid dollar range is from \$.01 to \$ 500.00.

Gift Card Max Amount Value: This parameter specifies the maximum value for a gift card. The valid dollar range is from \$.01 to \$ 500.00.

Gift Card PLU for Recharging: This parameter specifies the PLU number designated for recharging the gift card.

Gift Card in System: This parameter provides the option to enable the Gift Card feature in the system.

Gift Card Range: From/To: This parameter specifies the range of PLU numbers reserved for gift cards. For example, PLU 1000 may be Gift Card \$ 25.00, and PLU 1001 may be Gift Card \$ 50.00. Valid range is 0 to 99999999999999.

Presentation

Poll Customer Display

These parameters are used to customize the messages appearing on the two-line customer display. Different messages can be programmed to display on the POS terminal when in a 'Closed' state as well as a 'Next Customer' (sales) state.

There are four lines available for messages, however if you are using a two-line display, only two messages can be displayed. Messages may consist of any alphanumeric character, and can be in upper or lower case.

Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 1: This parameter defines the message that will appear on the top line (Line 1) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 2: This parameter defines the message that will appear on the bottom line (Line 2) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 3: If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the third line (Line 3) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 4: If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the fourth line (Line 4) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Length: This parameter specifies the maximum length (number of characters) of the message per line for the 'POS Closed' state. If the Width entered is greater than the customer display width, the message scrolls. The Width entered must be at least the width of the message entered or it does not display correctly. If 0 is entered, the customer display will default to 'This Lane is Closed'. The valid range is 0 to 49.

Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 1: This parameter defines the message that will appear on the top line (Line 1) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 2: This parameter defines the message that will appear on the bottom line (Line 2) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 3: If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the third line (Line 3) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 4: If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the fourth line (Line 4) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Length: This parameter specifies the maximum length (number of characters) of the message per line for the 'Next Customer' (sales) state. If the Width entered is greater than the customer display width, the message scrolls. The Width entered must be at least the width of the message entered or it does not display correctly. If 0 is entered, the display will default to 'Next Customer Please' or 'Secure Mode', if the terminal is in a 'secure' state. The valid range is 0 to 49.

Retailer Information

These parameters allow the user to enter retailer information to be printed on multi-part receipts, when tendering with a credit card.

Retailer Information (sub-folder 1-5): Retailer information details may be added for up to five credit cards. Each credit card multi-part receipts supports up to five lines of retailer information. These lines are printed on the multi-part receipt below the header, during a transaction with a credit card. After entering retailer information, link it to the corresponding tender type.

Retailer Information (1-5) Line 1: Line 1 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

Retailer Information (1-5) Line 2: Line 2 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

Retailer Information (1-5) Line 3: Line 3 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

Retailer Information (1-5) Line 4: Line 4 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

Retailer Information (1-5) Line 5: Line 5 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

Receipt

Regular Printing (sub-folder)

GENERAL (sub-folder)

Print Currency Symbol on Receipt: This parameter provides the option of printing the currency symbol (e.g., \$) on the customer receipt. (Yes/No)

Print Duplicate Receipt on Loans & Pickups: This parameter provides the option of printing a duplicate receipt on loans and pickups at the POS terminals. (Yes/No)

Print Separate Receipts for Each Tender on Pickups: This parameter provides the option of printing individual receipts for each tender type picked up. (Yes/No)

Print "PLU not Found" Slip: This parameter specifies that when an item is entered but not found in the PLU file, a slip will be printed, on which the cashier can manually enter the details of the unfound item, that can be used later to update the item file. (Yes/No)

Print “PLU not Found on Inquiry” Slip: This parameter specifies that when a price query is entered on an item not found in the PLU file, a slip will be printed, on which the cashier can manually enter details of the unfound item; that can later be entered into the system. (Yes/No)

Print Total Number of Items on Receipt: This parameter provides the option to print the total number of items purchased on the customer receipt. Options are ‘None’, ‘On Balance due Line’ or ‘On Separate Line’.

Customer Currency Code on Right of Value: This parameter provides the option to print the currency symbol to the right of the value on the customer receipt.

Merge Bonus Coupon into Store Coupon: This parameter provides the option to merge the bonus coupon total with store coupon total on the customer receipt.

Omit Non-Member Card Promotion in Savings Report: This parameter provides the option to omit printing non-member promotions in the ‘Your Savings Today’ summary report on the customer receipt. (Note: Non-member promotions are promotions that are rewarded to every customer meeting the necessary purchase requirements.)

End Ticket (sub-folder)

Print Cashier Name on Receipt: This parameter provides the option of printing the Cashier's name on the customer receipt. The cashier name will print at the bottom of the receipt, before the trailer.

Suppress Printing Points on Receipt: This parameter provides the option of not printing member card points on the receipt. (Yes/No)

Print Change at the End of Receipt: This parameter specifies the location of printing the customer's change on the receipt. When Yes is selected, the customer's change will print at the end of the customer receipt, after the tax report. When No is selected, the customer's change will print after 'Balance Due' and the tendered amount.

Balance Due (sub-folder)

Print “Bal. Due” Each Time Subtotal Pressed: The parameter provides the option to print ‘balance due’ on the customer receipt each time the subtotal key is pressed.

Print “Bal. Due” After Each Tender: The parameter provides the option to print ‘Balance Due’ on the customer receipt each time a tender is processed.

Tax Report Before Balance Due: The parameter provides the option to print the tax report before ‘Balance Due’ on the customer receipt. If No is selected, the tax report will print after ‘Balance Due’ on the customer receipt.

Print Balance Due in Large Font: This parameter provides the option of printing ‘Balance Due’ in a large font on the customer receipt.

Coupons (sub-folder)

Print Coupons in Special Format: This parameter provides the option to print coupons in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

Omit Coupon Total in “YOUR savings” Group: This parameter provides the option to print a coupon total line (text line ‘TOTAL CPNS’ with count and amount) in the ‘Your Savings Today’ summary report on the customer receipt.

Vendor Coupon Description: This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined vendor coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the vendor coupon tender description in reports.

Store Coupon Description: This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined store coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the store coupon tender description in reports.

Bonus Coupon Description: This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined bonus coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the bonus coupon tender description in reports.

Triple Coupon Description: This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined triple coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the triple coupon tender description in reports.

Savings (sub-folder)

Print Saving Plus Total on Receipt: This parameter provides the option to print a 'Savings Plus Total' on the customer receipt. The 'Savings Plus Total' is the sales total of items purchased in departments that have the attribute, 'Include in Savings Plus Total', set (refer to *Office User's Guide, Department Maintenance*, for details).

Savings Group Total Text: This parameter defines the text to print for the 'Additional Savings Group' total line on the customer receipt. This is a free-form text field and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.

Print Savings in Special Format: This parameter provides the option to print additional savings total in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

Omit Your Savings Summary Report: This parameter provides the option to omit printing the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt. When set to Yes, the savings summary report will not print on the customer receipt. When set to No, the 'Your Savings Today' text line, with the relevant savings description and amount, will print on the receipt.

Detailed Item Savings: This parameter provides the option to print savings, by item, in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

Omit Item Savings Total: This parameter provides the option to omit printing an Item Savings Total line (with count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

Omit Savings Total: This parameter provides the option to print savings total line (text line 'TOTAL SAVINGS', with count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

Present All Total Savings as Negative Values: This parameter provided the option to print all savings totals in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report, as negative values on the customer receipt (i.e., a minus sign to the left of the value).

Print Savings Marketing Message: This parameter provides the option to print a Savings Marketing Message, highlighting the dollar amount and percent savings, on the customer receipt, for qualifying customers. When this parameter is set to Yes, the *Saving Marketing Percent %* parameter, below, determines what marketing savings message will print on the customer receipt. If this parameter, *Print Savings Marketing Message* is set to No, a 'You Could Have Saved' message will print on the customer receipt.

Your Savings Today Text: This parameter provides the option to define the header to print on the summary savings report (refer to parameter 'Your Savings Today') on the bottom of the customer receipt. The field is a free-form text parameter and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters. If this field is left blank, the default header ('Your Savings Today') will print.

Savings Marketing Percent: This parameter specifies the savings marketing percent. If this saving percent is matched or exceeded in the sales order, the Marketing Message with Percent template, below, will print on the customer. If the savings in the sales transaction does not reach this percent, the Marketing Message without Percent template, below, will print on the customer receipt.

Template for Savings Marketing Message with Percent: This parameter defines the name of the template for the Savings Marketing Message with Percent as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts. This 'Savings Message' will print on the customer receipt when the percent savings in the order exceeds the value in the *Saving Marketing Percent* parameter above.

Template for Savings Marketing Message without Percent: This parameter defines the name of the template for the Savings Marketing Message without Percent as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts. This message will print on the customer receipt when the percent savings in the order does not exceed the value in the *Saving Marketing Percent* parameter above.

Template for Member Card/Frequent Shopper Print: This parameter defines the name of the template for the Member Card/Frequent Shopper as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts.

Member Card Saving Message: This parameter provides the option to define a member card saving message (for example, 'Club Royal Savings') that will print for member promotions in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the bottom of the customer receipt. If this field is left blank, the description from the promotion record (for example, '10% Bakery Discount') will print.

Suppress Signs from Promotions Printing: This parameter provides the option to suppress signs from promotion printing.

Member Card Promotion Only Text for “Your Savings Today”

Report: If parameter *Omit Non-member Card Promotion in Savings Report* is set to Yes, this parameter provides the option to print a member card promotion only total (count and amount) in the ‘Your Savings Today’ summary. This parameter is a free-form text field, supporting up to 20 alphanumeric characters.

Signature (sub-folder)

Suppress Signature Receipt on Credit Transactions: This parameter provides the option of suppressing the printing of the credit card signature slip for selected customers. Options are 'Never', 'Member' (member card holders) or 'Always' (all customers). This feature requires buffer printing.

Minimum Amount for Printing Signature Receipt: This parameter provides the option of suppressing the printing of the credit card signature slip when the credit card value is below a minimum dollar amount. Valid range is 0.00 to – 999999999.99.

Prompt Cashier for Signature Required: This parameter provides the option to prompt the cashier for a customer signature on credit card transaction when the signature slip is not suppressed.

Bonus Buy (sub-folder)

PLU Comparison Printing Type: This parameter specifies the options for printing PLU Price Comparison items on the customer receipt. Options are:

- None – No printing on the receipt
- Summary – Print summary of PLU Price Comparison savings on the bottom of customer receipt.
- Line – Print PLU Price Comparison savings per item on the customer receipt.
- Summary & Line – Print PLU Price Comparison savings at item level and at the end of the order on the customer receipt.

Print Summary Report Header: This parameter provides the option to print a header on the PLU Price Comparison summary at the bottom of the customer receipt (for example \$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$).

Print Summary Report for Type 1: This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 1 (e.g., Bonus Buy) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

Print Summary Report for Type 2: This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 2 (e.g., Advertised Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

Print Summary Report for Type 3: This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 3 (e.g., Matched Advertised Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

Print Summary Report for Type 4: This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 4 (e.g., Private Label Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

Print Summary Report for Type 5: This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 5 (e.g., Competitor Compare Label Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

Print Summary Report for Total: The parameter provides the option to print a Total Price Comparison Savings in the Summary Report.

Print Summary Report Footer: This parameter provides the option to print a footer on the Price Comparison summary on the bottom of the customer receipt (for example, \$\$\$\$\$\$).

Tax (sub-folder)

Omit Tax Report Total: If parameter, *Display Individual Tax on Receipt*, is selected, a Tax Report will print on the customer receipt, which lists taxable amount and tax due, by individual tax rate. The 'Omit Tax Report Total' parameter provides the option to print an additional 'Total Tax' summary line for the Tax Report on the customer receipt. When this parameter is set to No, this 'Total Tax' summary line will print on the receipt.

Order Tax Report Header: This parameter provides the option to define the header to print on the Tax Report (refer to parameter *Display Individual Tax on Receipt*). The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print as the first line in the Tax Report on the customer receipt. If this field is left blank, the default header (TAX-CODE, TAXABLE-VAL and TAX-VALUE) will print.

Buffer Printing (sub-folder)

Buffer Printing: This parameter provides the option to store the sales transaction information in the printer buffer (memory) until completion of the transaction. When buffered printing is enabled, the printer beeps each time an item is entered. Select this option to enable sorting of items on the receipt (Organized Receipt).

Combine Same Items: If Buffer Printing is selected, this parameter provides the option to allow 'like' items to print as one entry on the customer receipt. When set to Yes, multiples of an item print as one entry on the receipt, regardless of the order in when they are rung up.

Omit Voided and Cancelled Items: If Buffer Printing is selected, this parameter provides the options to omit printing voided or cancelled items on the customer receipt. (Yes/No)

Total Sales Text: If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides a text description for the Total Sales line on the customer receipt. The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print as a 'Total Sales' summary, after all the sorted item and department sales entries, on the customer receipt.

Total Coupons Text: If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides a text description for the Total Coupon line on the customer receipt. The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print after the 'sorted' coupons, on the customer receipt.

Group All Coupons: If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides the option to group all coupons together on the customer receipt.

Group Complex Promotions in Additional Savings Section:

This parameter provides the option to include complex promotions in the 'Additional Savings' section on the customer receipt. Examples of complex promotions include:

- Enhanced promotions with the following attributes set:
 - Reward types other than credits or credits per item
 - Give reward on the highest/lowest
 - Minimum purchase
 - 2nd Thresholds
 - Minimum Item weight
 - Maximum Item weight
 - Coupon Type of one time only or one time per reward
- Enhanced promotions that require a member card
- Group promotions that require a member card
- Level promotions that require a member card

Print Voids, Refunds Special Format: This parameter provides the option to print voids and refunds in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

Sort Receipt (sub-folder)

Sort Receipt: This parameter enables the Reorganized Receipt feature; which provides various combinations for printing of the sales receipt for the benefit of the customer. To sort customer receipts, the *Buffer Printing* parameter must be selected.

Main Sort: This parameter enables the user to define how the ticket is sorted and printed on the customer receipt. Options are:

- None
- Department Name
- Department Name plus Total
- Item Name
- Price Ascending
- Price Descending
- Department Number

Second Sort: This parameter provides an optional second sort of items on the customer receipt. Options are:

- None
- Alpha (Sort items alphabetically)
- Price Ascending
- Price Descending

Net Price (sub-folder)

Net Price Text Message: If the *Net Price Printing* parameter is enabled, this parameter defines the text to print on the net price line. This is a free-form text field and the net price description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.

Net Price Free Text Message: If the *Net Price Printing* parameter is enabled, this parameter defines the text to print on the net price line when an item is free (i.e., net price is zero). This is a free-form text field and the net price free description can be up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

Net Price Printing: This parameter enables the Net Price Printing option, which prints a net price line for items on promotion. When set to Yes, items on promotion will print regular price, promotion amount and net price on the customer receipt (per item). This feature requires that Buffer Printing be turned on.

Print Net Price in Special Format: This parameter provides the option to print Net Price items in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

Saving (sub-folder)

Your Savings Today: If Buffer Printing is selected; this parameter provides the option to print this text line with relevant savings description and amount, on the bottom of the customer receipt. For example, if items on promotion, reduction, offer, or discount have been rung up, this savings summary will print on the customer receipt.

Savings Group Header Text: This parameter defines the header to print for 'Additional Savings Group' promotions on the customer receipt. This is a free-form text field and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.

Print Additional Savings in Special Format: This parameter provides the option to print 'Additional Savings' promotion in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

Signs (sub-folder)

Currency: This parameter specifies the currency sign (e.g., \$) to print on the customer receipt.

Minus: This parameter specifies the minus sign (e.g., -) to print on the customer receipt.

Decimal: This parameter specifies the sign be used for decimal quantity input (usually a point).

Format: This parameter specifies the format sign (,) to be used.

Non-Taxable Print Character: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print by non-taxable items on the customer receipt (usually blank).

Multiple Tax Print Character: This parameter provides the option of specifying the sign to print on the receipt when two or more taxes are applicable.

Food Stamp Print Character: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print by Food Stamp eligible items on the customer receipt.

Non-Food Stamp Print Character: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print by Non-Food Stamp eligible items on the customer receipt.

Cost Plus Print Character: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to be printed next to a Cost Plus item or department on the customer receipt.

Non-Cost Plus Print Character: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to be printed when a sale is a not a Cost Plus item or department.

Frequent Shopper Print Character: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print next to an item that has a Frequent Shopper discount.

Non Frequent Shopper Print Character: This parameter the option of specifying the character to print next to an item that does not have a Frequent Shopper discount.

Print Currency on Check (Dollar): This parameter specifies the text to print on the check, with Check Printing. For example, 'Dollars'.

Print Currency on Check (Cents): This parameter specifies the text to print on the check, with Check Printing. For example, 'Cents'.

WIC Sale Sign: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print next to WIC (Women, Infants, & Children) items on the customer receipt.

DEA Sale Sign: This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print next to DEA items (items controlled by Drug Enforcement Administration) on the customer receipt.

Audit Printer (sub-folder)

Level of Detail on Audit Printer: This parameter specifies the level of ticket detail to log to the in-lane POS audit printer or Electronic Journal. Options are:

- Minimum – Nothing prints
- Medium - No item details print
- Full – All details print

Additional Tender Information

This feature is currently not supported.

General

Default Minimum Purchase Amount for Promotions: This parameter specifies the minimum purchase amount required before a promotion offer can be given. Valid range 0.00 to 9999999.99.

Type of Extended Balance Due to Display: This parameter provides the option to select the type of Balance Due, to display on the customer display. Options are 'None' and 'Food Stamp'. If 'None' is selected, only 'Balance Due' will display on the customer display. If 'Food Stamp' is selected, 'Balance Due' will display on the top line of the display and 'F/S Subtotal' will display on the bottom line of the display.

Multiple Languages in System: This parameter allows multiple languages to be support on the POS terminal.

Always Read PLUs from PC: This parameter provides the option to always read the PLU from only the MFS1 PLU file. When set to Yes, the POS terminals ignore their own PLU files and read only from the MFS1 PLU file.

Check Guarantee Functionality: This functionality is currently not implemented.

Sales Printer Sound: This parameter specifies the printer sound at the POS terminal. Options are:

- None - No beep
- Buffer Printing - Beeps with every item
- Always - Allows buffer printing without the beeps

Cashier File is Resident on Post: This parameter provides the option to load the Cashier file onto the POS terminals. When selected, this option provides better control of off-line cashier sign-on. If the POS terminals are off-line, cashier passwords are validated against the cashier file that is resident on the POS Terminal.

Notes:

- If you do not select this option, POS terminals receive cashier data when cashiers sign on or when supervisor authorization is required.
- If your store works with the parameter, *System integrity in system*, add the EMPL.QDX file to the QDX Files Checksum Table in Field Engineer's Utilities.
- Loading a large Cashier File onto the POS terminal takes up memory and can affect performance.

Bad Account File is Resident on POST: This parameter provides the option to load the Bad Accounts file onto the POS terminals. To load the file onto the POS terminal for the first time, you must either perform a Cold Start or run a general batch file that will insert all bad account records.

Maintenance is sent to the POS terminal any time a change is made to the bad accounts file in the Back Office via Bad Account Maintenance. Any changes made to Bad Accounts through General Batches, generates maintenance to POS terminals.

While in off-line mode, bad accounts are validated against the Bad Accounts File, which is resident on the POS terminal.

Notes:

- If your store works with the parameter, *System integrity in system*, add the ACCT.QDX file to the QDX Files Checksum Table in Field Engineer's Utilities.
- Loading a large Bad Accounts File onto the POS terminal takes up memory and can affect performance.

Euro Rate: This parameter defines the conversion rate (numeric value) between the Euro and local currency.

Prompt for Customers ID on Save Transaction: This parameter provides the option to prompt the cashier for a customer's ID (e.g., driver's license), when saving (suspending) a sales transaction. When set to yes, the prompt will display when the 'Save' function is initiated. The customer's ID will print on the 'Save Transaction' receipt, for later identification purposes.

Prompt Large Total on Cashier Display: This parameter provides the option to display a large 'Balance Due' message on the Cashier Display, after the Total key is pressed, providing for easy viewing by the Cashier.

Consecutive Scan Count Display: This parameter provides the option to display a 'Consecutive Scan/Item Count' field on the Cashier Display, showing the number of times the same product has been sold consecutively by scanning or manual entry. (Yes/No)

Number of Minutes to Prompt Before EOW Start: Prior to the start of the End-of-Week process, a message is displayed on the screen, indicating that the End-of-Week is ready to start. This parameter specifies the number of minutes prior to the start of the EOW to display the message. This message requests confirmation to begin the EOW process. Valid range is 0 to 99 minutes. (This parameter is reserved for future development.)

Number of Minutes to Prompt (After Warning), to Confirmation: This parameter specifies the number of minutes following the EOW prompt, after which the End-of-Week will automatically start. Valid range is 0 to 99 minutes. (This parameter is reserved for future development.)

POS Date Format: This parameter provides the option to select the date format used on the POS terminal display. The American date format is MM/DD/YYYY. The European date format is DD/MM/YYYY.

Supervisor Privileges: This parameter is a multi-parameter, which allows up to 8 supervisor privilege levels in order to establish proper authorization for handling events, such as Control Checks, at the POS terminal.

Megabytes Remaining on POS Disk to Initiate a Warning Message: This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space (in megabytes) required on a POS terminal. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

E_Ticket

The E_Ticket feature allows Loyalty customers (member card holders) to get an electronic copy of their sales receipt by e-mail. The email receipts can be sent at the online buying time or in the End of Day procedure.

E_Ticket in System: This parameter provides the option to activate the E_Ticket in the system. (Note: To send member holders an E_Ticket receipt, the parameter 'Member card number includes check digit must not be selected.)

E_Ticket Web Incoming/Outgoing Directory: This field provides the path to the E_Ticket Web Incoming/Out Directory (C:\E_Ticket\...).

E_Ticket Tender Number: This parameter indicates the Tender Type for tracking E_Ticket transactions. Valid range is 0-9999.

E_Ticket Master POS Number: This parameter identifies the virtual POS terminal designated for processing E_Ticket transactions.

Front Office Parameters

Alerts

System alerts notify office staff or management of technical problems, security violations, and other irregular or exceptional events on the POS terminals or Back Office servers. These parameters enable tracking of system alerts and define locations for displaying alerts.

Alert in System: This parameter enables the tracking of alerts on the system. If this parameter is not selected, no alerts will be created.

Show Alerts on MFS1: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on MFS1 server.

Show Alerts on MFS2: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on MFS2 server.

Show Alerts on LFS3: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS3 workstation.

Show Alerts on LFS4: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS4 workstation.

Show Alerts on LFS5: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS5 workstation.

Show Alerts on LFS6: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS6 workstation.

Show Alerts on LFS7: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS7 workstation.

Show Alerts on LFS8: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS8 workstation.

Show Alerts on LFS9: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS9 workstation.

Show Alerts on LFS10: The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS10 workstation.

End of Day

General

Compare SQL to QDX During EOD: This parameter provides the option during End of Day to check for errors in the databases, by comparing SQL to QDX tables. Options are 'None', 'Check Only' or 'Full'. When set to 'None', no checking will be performed during the EOD. When set to 'Check Only', the QDX tables will be compared to the SQL tables and any differences will be reported. When set to 'Full', the tables will be compared and rebuilt if any differences are found.

Auto Declaration in End of Day: This parameter provides the options to update Cashiers/POS declarations values for 'Auto Declaration' tenders during End of Day.

24-Hours Store: This parameter provides the option of specifying the store is a 24-hour store.

Allow Changing of Trading Date, Next Trading Date, EOD Type: This parameter provides the option of allowing authorized users to change trading date, next trading date and EOD type.

Pause EOD at the End of Critical Part: This parameter provides the option of pausing the End of Day after the completion of the critical part. When set to Yes, the user will be prompted to press '*Continue*' once the critical part of the End of Day has completed. The pause allows user to monitor the End of Day during the critical phase.

Automatic End of Day: This parameter provides the option for the system to automatically run the End of Day procedure.

Warning Message if Declarations not done: This parameter provides the option to issue a warning message that declarations have not been done when running the End of Day. Parameter options are 'None', 'Warning Only' or 'Error: Stop End of Day'.

Reset POS Counter During End-of-Day: This parameter provides the option to reset transaction numbers on the POS terminals to zero with every End of Day. (Yes/No)

Perform Checksum During End-of-Day: This parameter provides the option to compare the PLU files in the POS terminals to the PLU file on MFS1, during the End of Day process. If differences are found, the POS terminals are updated after the End of Day has completed. This process is done in the background and does not interfere with the operation of the POSTs.

Tax Report to Follow POS Report: This parameter provides the option to print the Tax Report immediately after the POS Report (at the POS terminal) during the End of Day procedure. Reference parameter, *Don't Print POS Reports During End-of-Day*, below.

Don't Print POS Reports During End-of-Day: The parameter provides the option to not print POS Reports at the POS terminals, during the End of Day procedure. (Yes/No)

Disallow Automatic End-of-Day Between (Start Time - 24 Hour Clock): This parameter specifies the 'Start Time' (e.g., 8) to prohibit running an Automatic End of Day.

Disallow Automatic End-of-Day Between (End Time - 24 Hour Clock): This parameter specifies the 'End Time' (e.g., 20) to prohibit running an Automatic End of Day.

Warning Message if Saved Tickets Found: This parameter provides the option of issuing a warning message if saved tickets (suspended sales transactions) are found during the End-of-Day. Options are 'None', 'Warning Only' or 'Error: Stop End-of-Day'.

Send Ticket by Email at End-of-Day: This parameter provides the option of automatically emailing Loyalty customers (member card holders) a copy of their sales receipt during the End of Day process.

Time Out for Interactive Part Message: At the end of the interactive part of the End-of-Day, a message is displayed on the screen, indicating that this phase of the End-of-Day is complete. This parameter specifies the number of minutes after which the critical part of the End-of-Day will automatically start, when the referenced message is posted, but not acknowledged. Valid range is 0 to 999.

End-of-Day Time Restriction (in Hours): This parameter represents the number of hours since the last End-of-Day was performed. If another End-of-Day is attempted before this number of hours has passed since the last End-of-Day, a message will display, giving the user the opportunity to continue or abort the EOD request. Valid range is 0 to 24 hours.

Allow Printed Report Copies at EOD (End-of-Day): This parameter provides the option to allow printing of reports during the EOD (End-of-Day) process.

Backup PLU and Promotion Tables before EOD Process:

This parameter provides the option to backup PLU and Promotion data as part of the End-of-Day process. When set to Yes, immediately following the critical part of the End-of-Day, an automatic procedure is invoked which writes the database backup.

Allow User to Sort Reports Printing During EOD: This parameter provides the option to select the order in which store reports are printed during the End-of-Day. When this parameter is set to Yes, an extra column, called 'User Order Number' will display on the EOD Report Parameters screen. All reports have a default order number of 999. The order number can be modified to specify the numeric sequence in which the reports will print during the EOD. Reports with an order number of 999 will print at the end of the queue. (Note: Some reports print automatically before the transfer of data, and their print sequence cannot be modified.)

Archive

Number of History Days for Daily PLU Sales: This parameter specifies the number of days to store daily PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 300 represents 300 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Weeks for Week PLU Sales: This parameter specifies the number of weeks to store weekly PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 50 represents 50 weeks. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Months for Month PLU Sales: This parameter specifies the number of months to store monthly PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 12 represents 12 months. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Years for Year PLU Sales: This parameter specifies the number of years to store yearly PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 3 represents 3 years. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Shifts for Cashier/POS History Tables: This parameter specifies the number of shifts to store for Cashier/POS History tables. For example, a value of 500 represents 500 Cashier/POS shifts. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Days for All Other History Tables: This parameter specifies the number of days to store All Other History Tables in SQL tables. For example, a value of 300 represents 300 days of history. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Days for User Access Log: This parameter specifies the number of days to store the User Access Log in SQL tables. For example, a value of 250 represents 250 days of history. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Days for PLU Batch Table (Execute): This parameter specifies the number of days to store the history for the PLU Batch Table (Execute). For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days of history. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Days for EJ (Electronic Journal): This parameter specifies the number of days to store the Electronic Journal. For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Number of History Days for PLU Batch Table (Error): This parameter specifies the number of days to store the history for the PLU Batch Table (Error). For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Days for Rep Archive: This parameter specifies the number of days to store the Report Archive. For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

MFS1 Backup Directory: This field provides the path to the MFS1 Backup Directory (e.g., D:\MSSQL7\BACKUP).

MFS2 Backup Directory: This field provides the path to the MFS2 Backup Directory (e.g., D:\Backup).

Number of History Days for Basket Analysis History Tables: This parameter specifies the number of days to store the Basket Analysis History Table. This table is used to generate the Basket Analysis Report, which lists the number of customer sales orders that were processed at a user-defined specified sales volume range. Valid number of days to store this information is 0 to 999.

Number of History Days for Alert Table: This parameter specifies the number of days to store the System Alert Table. For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

Period

End of Week's Day: This parameter specifies the day of the week to perform the *End of Week* process. The default day is Sunday.

End of Year's Month: This parameter specifies the month of the year to process the *End of Year* totals. The default date is December 31.

End of Year's Day: This parameter specifies the day of the month to process the *End of Year* totals. The range is 1 to 31.

End of Month Definitions: The multi-parameter specifies the day in each month on which *End of Month* totals will be processed. The default date is the last calendar date of each month.

ASCII Transaction File

Convert Transaction File to ASCII during EOD: The parameter provides the option of converting the Transaction File (Electronic Journal) to an ASCII file during the End-of-Day procedure. This file is created in addition to the regular transaction file.

Output File Path: This field provides the path to the Output ASCII file (e.g., C:\PCMASTER\TMP\ASCII\TR.TXT).

Sort by POS Number: This parameter provides the option to sort the output ASCII file by POS number.

Field Delimiter: This parameter specifies the field delimiter of the output ASCII file. Options are None, Comma or Tab.

Include Blank Lines for Un-Supported OPCODES: This parameter provides the option including blank lines for unsupported OPCODES in the ASCII file.

PLU and Batch

PLU Options

Validation (sub-folder)

Force Short and Long Description to Match: The parameter provides the option to force the POST Description (short) and Item Description (Long) fields in the PLU record to always match. If this parameter is set to Yes, any type of maintenance to existing items, will automatically update the Item Description with the POST Description. (Yes/No)

PLU Follow Department Flags as Default: This parameter provides the option to assign a new PLU, the default field values of the department to which the item is assigned.

PLU must have a Valid Check Digit: This parameter provides the option to require the PLU numbers must have a valid check digit.

Zero Price PLU Allowed: This parameter provides the option to allow zero-priced items in PLU Maintenance (i.e., users can enter items with no price). UPC2 items are allowed to be zero-priced regardless of this parameter.

Update All Mix and Match Groups if One PLU Changed: This parameter provides the option of updating the price and quantity of all items with similar Mix and Match codes, if changing the price and quantity of one of the items. When set to Yes, all items with similar Mix and Match codes will be updated when changing the price or quantity of one of the items. When set to No, each price must be individually changed.

Set “Manual Price” on if Item Price is 0: If the parameter, *Zero Price PLU Allowed*, is selected, this parameter provides the option to allow cashiers to manually enter a price. When this parameter is set to Yes, the cashier will be prompted to enter the item's price when a zero-priced item is scanned or key-entered.

Prohibit Manual Changes to “Negative Entry” flag in PLU Maintenance: This parameter provides the option to prohibit manual changes to the ‘Negative Entry’ flag in PLU Maintenance.

Note: If the parameter *Negative Entry* is checked, you may not set a coupon flag (store, bonus, or vendor) at the store. The system displays an error message ‘Not allowed, negative entry flag set’. If a coupon flag is already check, you may not set the negative entry parameters. The system displays an error message ‘Not allowed, coupon flag set’.

Prohibit Manual Changes to Non-Merchandise Flag: This parameter provides the option to prohibit manual changes to the 'Non-Merchandise' flag in PLU Maintenance and PLU Batch Maintenance at the store. When set to Yes, the 'Non-merchandise' flag will be allowed to be change only from host batches.

Internal Code (sub-folder)

Internal Number must have a Valid Check Digit: This parameter provides the option of validating the check digit on Internal Code (item number).

Update ALL Items Linked to Internal Code if One PLU Changed: If the parameter *Internal Code in System* (see below) is selected, this parameter provides the option of updating ALL PLU items linked with the same internal code, when one PLU is changed. Details that are affected are department, price and frequent shopper discount amount.

Internal Code (Item Number) in System: This parameter provides the option to enable the Internal Code feature in the system. Internal codes are linked to the PLU number. When set to Yes, users can link multiple PLU items to the same internal code. For example, different flavors of Jell-O can be linked to the same internal code. If selected, any type of maintenance to existing items will require the internal code number to be added to the PLU record.

CDV Scheme for PLU Internal Number: If the parameter *Internal Number must have a Valid Check Digit* is selected, this parameter specifies the check digit scheme for the internal code. The range is 0 to 10.

Subdepartment (sub-folder)

PLU must be Linked to Subdepartment: This parameter provides the option to require that all PLU items be linked to a sub-department, as well as a department. When set to Yes, any type of maintenance to existing items will require the sub-department number to be added to the PLU record.

Subdepartment in the System: This parameter provides the option to enable the Sub-department feature in the system.

Change Price Reason (sub-folder)

Restrict Maintenance for Change Price Reason Codes

Range: The PLU reason codes feature enables you create a list of codes that allow you to state the reason for making a change to a PLU (e.g., item on sale, vendor price increase, discontinue item, etc.). Once you build up a list of reasons, you can use them in PLU Maintenance any time you make a change to a PLU. This parameter allows you to restrict in-store maintenance to a specified range price change reason codes. These price change reason codes can be used but will be 'read-only' and can only be modified by authorized personnel. This is a multiple parameter with a valid range of 0 to 9999.

Discount Prohibit (sub-folder)

Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Sale: This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on sale. If this parameter is set to Yes, when a sales is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Promotion: This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on promotion. If this parameter is set to Yes, when a promotion is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Reduction: This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on Reduction. If this parameter is set to Yes, when a reduction is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Offer: This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on Offer. If this parameter is set to Yes, when an offer is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

Auditing (sub-folder)

Audit Levels: This parameter provides the option to track and log changes made to PLU details. Options are:

- No Audit
- Full Audit – All details logged
- Only Headers – Only basic details logged

PLU Items Data Tracking: This parameter provides the option to track items when they are updated or modified.

PLU Deletion (sub-folder)

These parameters relate to the Delayed PLU Deletion feature that enables users to flag PLU items for deletion and retain them on the PLU file for several days before they are actually deleted.

Delete PLU by Local and Host: This parameter provides the option to enable the Delayed PLU Deletion feature in the system.

Zero Sales Days Before Actual PLU Local Deletion: This parameter specifies the number of days with no sales that must pass, before a locally created PLU deletion (through PLU Maintenance or Local PLU Batch File) will actually be deleted. (Range 0 to 999)

Zero Sales Days Before Actual PLU Host Deletion: This parameter specifies the number of days with no sales that must pass, before a host initiated PLU deletion (PLU Batch) will actually be deleted. (Range 0 to 999)

Number of Days After Deletion Before Actual Deletion, Regardless of Sales: This parameter specifies the number of days that must pass before deleting the PLU item, regardless of the number of zero sales days. (Range 0 to 999)

PLU Sales Log (sub-folder)

PLU Sales Log Flag: This parameter is currently not supported.

PLU Sales Log Clean: This parameter is currently not supported.

Batch Options

PC Number to Activate Batch Files by Date/Time: The parameter specifies the PC number, which should trigger date and time-activated batches. The range is 0 to 999.

Use OPCODE #1 (New) as INSERT/UPDATE Code (Host Files): This parameter refers to the Batch Code field in the Host Batch file. If this parameter is set to Yes, when processing a record with Code #1 (New) in a batch file, the system will insert this record as a new PLU, or update an existing PLU if the PLU number exists. When this parameter is set to No, and the PLU exists, an error message will be generated.

Use OPCODE #2 (Update) as INSERT/UPDATE Code (Host Files): This parameter refers to the Batch Code field in the Host Batch. If this parameter is set to Yes, when processing a record with Code #2 (Update) in a batch file, the system will insert as a new PLU if the item does not exist, or update an existing PLU if the PLU number exists. When this parameter is set to No, and the PLU does not exist, an error message will be generated.

Auto Execute Full Item Load: This parameter refers to loading a full item file. When set to Yes, a full item load executes automatically. When set to No, the item file load must be executed manually.

Determine the Maximum Amount of Items in a Local Batch:

This parameter specifies the maximum number of items in a local batch (in-store batch). When creating a local batch and if the number of items in a batch exceeds this parameter, a warning message will appear, indicating that the maximum number of items allowed in a local batch has been reached. No additional items will be added to the batch. The range is 0 to 99999999.

Go to Price Field After Item Number In PLU Batches: This parameter provides the option to access the price field in the Item record, immediately after entering the PLU number in PLU Batch Maintenance. When set to yes, the user will access the price field immediately after keying in the PLU number, versus having to tab through other fields in the item record to get to the price field.

Compare PLU Batch Name to Batch Header: This parameter provides the option of validating the PLU Batch Name to the Batch Header. When set to Yes and if the PLU Batch Name and Batch Header do not match, the batch will be rejected and moved to a folder for rejected batches. An event will also be written to the Event Viewer Application Log.

Compare General Batch Name to Batch Header: This parameter provides the option of validating the General Batch Name to the Batch Header. When set to Yes and if the General Batch Name and Batch Header do not match, the batch will be rejected and moved to a folder for rejected batches (\program files\posware\office\import rejected folder). An event will also be written to the Event Viewer Application Log.

Operation

Erase Criteria when Returning from PLU Form to PLU Grid:

This parameter provides the option to clear PLUS previously loaded by the filter, after inserting a new PLU. When set to Yes, after inserting a new PLU, any PLUs previously loaded into the PLU by the filter option will be cleared. Only the new PLU will appear on the list.

Do not Prompt for Filter: This parameter provides the option to use the PLU Item Selector filter utility in PLU Maintenance. PLU Item Selector allows the user to search and find PLU items based on selected item criteria (e.g., department number or mix & match code), for quick and easy access to ranges of PLU items for file maintenance. When this parameter is set to Yes, the PLU Item Selector filter is not available in PLU Maintenance.

Allow Ordering of PLU Selection Criteria: The PLU Selection Criteria function enables you to easily select PLUs from predefined groups in order to create batches. You can select items based on any of the fields that are enabled in the PLU Batch Item Maintenance function. The *Allow Ordering of PLU Selection Criteria* parameter provides the option to customize the selection criteria by refining information from these PLU Batch Item fields.

Perform Expansion of PLU Input of 6 or 7 Digits: This parameter provides the option of automatically expanding zero-suppressed PLU items (PLU items with 6 or 7 digits). When set to Yes, the system will automatically expand the zero-suppressed PLU number to a standard 10 or 11 digit UPC number, when creating and storing the item in the Item File. Items (with 6 or 7 digits) key-entered at the POS terminal will automatically expanded to the standard 10 or 11 digit UPC number.

Reports

Customer and Item Counts

Bottle Deposits and Refunds do not Affect Item Count

Statistics: This parameter provides the option for not including bottle deposits and refunds in Item Count statistics. (Yes/No)

Non-Merchandise Items do not Affect Item Count Statistics:

This parameter provides the option for not including non-merchandise items in Item Count statistics. (Yes/No)

Orders with ONLY Bottle Deposits/Refunds or Non-Merchandise Departments do not Affect Customer Count:

This parameter provide the option for not including 'Bottle Refunds' and 'Non-Merchandising' ONLY orders in Customer Count. (Yes/No)

Orders with only Coupons do not Affect Customer Count:

This parameter provides the option of not including 'Coupon Only' orders in customer count. (Yes/No)

EJ (Electronic Journal) Header Text: This parameter provides the option to define a header (free-form text field) that displays and prints on sales transactions log in the Electronic Journal.

Itemized Check Report

Check Total by Group: The Itemized Check Report by Cashier/POS prints details of payments received by check, on a check-by-check basis. This parameter allows you to optionally print a Check Batch Total after every 'X' number of checks on the report. If this parameter is set to No, the report will list checks sequentially for each Cashier/POS, with a report total at the end of all the checks (per Cashier/POS).

If this parameter is set to Yes, in addition to the above totals, you will get a Check Batch Total, every 'X' checks (Group 1) and then a Final Batch Total at the end, for the last 'Y' number of checks (Group 2).

Group 1: Number of Checks in Total: If the *Check Total by Group* parameter is selected, this parameter specifies the number of checks ('X') for the Check Batch Totals on the Itemized Check Report.

Group 2: Number of Checks in Total: If the *Check Total by Group* parameter is selected, this parameter specifies the number of checks for the number of checks ('Y') for the Final Batch Total on the Itemized Check Report.

Productivity and Performance

Maximum Idle Time Multiplier: Reserved for future use.

Express Orders Size (Number of Items): This parameter provides the option to specify the size of Express Orders (number of items) for productivity and performance reporting. The range of Express Order size is 0 to 99.

Checker Number Range to be Used for Checker

Effectiveness Report: This parameter provides the option to specify a range (From – To Values) of checker numbers to be tracked in the Checker Effectiveness Report. Checker numbers outside of the range will not appear on this report.

Display Parameter Option to Hide Checker Names On Checker Effectiveness Report from On-Line Reports Screen: This parameter provides the option to hide checker names on the Checker Effective Report. When set to Yes, the user will have option to hide checker names when displaying and printing the report.

Electronic Journal

Font Size for EJ Printer: The parameter specifies the font size for printing the Electronic Journal. The font size range is from 4 to 15.

Set Printer for EJ: This parameter defines the printer for the Electronic Journal. The choices are either Default Printer or Second Printer.

VAT Report

Department Weekly Budget is VAT Exclusive: This parameter provides the option to exclude VAT (value added tax) taxes from department sales totals on the Department Weekly Budget Report. (VAT taxes are not used in United States.)

Tender Report

Separate Charge from Tenders List at Reports: This parameter provides the option to separate charges from other tenders listed on reports.

PLU Sales Report

Allow Printing Only Active Items: This parameter provides the option of printing only active items on the PLU Sales Report. When set to Yes, a 'Print Only Active Items' check box will display on the PLU Report screen, providing the option to print only active items or all items on the PLU Sales Report. (Note: An active item is any item that has a sales value greater than zero for the selected reporting period on the PLU Sales Report.)

V8 Front Office as Host

This Computer is a General Batches Host: This parameter enables the system to allow creating general promotion batches, which can be distributed to other stores within the chain.

Promotions are not Allowed to be Created in Range From:

To prevent creating duplicate promotions numbers, this parameter specifies the starting range (From) of promotion numbers reserved for Host.

Promotions are not Allowed to be Created in Range To:

To prevent creating promotions with duplicate numbers; this parameter specifies the ending number reserved for Host promotions.

System

Restrict the Number of Front Office Application Open

Instances: This parameter specifies the maximum number of active open *StoreLine/ISS45* Front Office Applications allowed at any given point in time. The system will support up to 5 open windows of the Front Office Application.

AR in System: This parameter enables the *StoreLine/ISS45* Accounts Receivable application in the system. This application makes available customer account charges or payments at the terminal and credit limit control at the account level. The AR application must be installed for this feature to work.

Timeout to Log-Off: This parameter specifies the number of minutes after which the back office application will be automatically terminated if the user did not move the mouse or press any key in the active window. Before logoff, the user will have 10 seconds to prevent this automatic logoff. The Auto-logoff will take the user into a new session of the back office application. The valid range is 0 to 60 minutes.

Disable/Enable Mode in System: This parameter provides the option to disable selected menu parameters when setting up new users. If disabled, the menu selection will not be displayed. This option is used for security purposes and for simplifying menu screens.

SysFont: This parameter is currently not supported.

Central Data Management

CDM Mode: This parameter is reserved for future use.

Enable “Charge Only” During Export: This parameter is reserved for future use.

Security

Password Change Every XX Days: This parameter provides the option to require the Front Office user to change the password after XX days. If this parameter is set to 0, the application will not prompt the user to change the password. If this parameter is set to a value other than 0, the user will be required to change the password after XX days. The new password has to differ from the old password. The valid range of days is 0 to 999.

Minimum Disk Space Drive

MFS1, Drive C (Megabytes): This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS1, Drive C, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

MFS1, Drive D (Megabytes): This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS1, Drive D, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

MFS2, Drive C (Megabytes): This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS2, Drive C, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

MFS2, Drive D (Megabytes): This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS2, Drive D, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

Cashier

Cashier Maintenance Screen to Exclude Personal

Information: This parameter provides the option to exclude personal information from displaying on the Cashier Maintenance screens, located on the Front Office menu. When set to Yes, only the Employee ID and Employee Name will be displayed.

ASP

These parameters pertain to the *StoreLine/ISS45* reporting module, which allows retailers to view reports containing sale data collected from their stores over the web, through a secure Internet connection.

Sales data is transmitted and stored on the Connected Services server farm in Dallas. Retailers can view their reports at any time from any place that has an Internet connection.

ASP in System: This parameter enables the execution of the appropriate software programs during the End-of-Day process, which creates the data and reports export, for transmission to the server farm.

ASP Reports Directory: This field provides the path to the directory where the export files are stored on MFS1. The location for these files is C:\Program Files\Posware\Office\Export\ASP\directory.

ASP Flag File: This parameter defines the name of the ASP Flag File. Once the export files have been created, the application creates a flag file, which serves as an indicator that all the files are ready to be exported to the server farm. (ASP Flag File name should be ASPflg.\$\$\$.)

POS Units and Measures

Decimal Point Position (0-2): This parameter defines the position of the decimal point (0-2) when weight is calculated on the scale. This number indicates the number of digits to the right of the decimal point.

Pounds or Kilograms Weight: This parameter specifies the unit of measure to be used by the POS scale: pounds or kilograms.

Programmable Barcodes

The Programmable Barcode Option enables the user to define an item code (UPC Number System) for variable price or variable weight items. The first two digits of the PLU item number may be used to represent an item price or a weight.

For example, PLU items whose numbers begin with the digits 02 are sold for \$ 2.99 (e.g., pre-packaged hot dogs); items whose numbers begin with 04 weigh 1 pound (e.g., pre-packaged tomatoes). This is called a 'variable price/weight' code. The price/weight codes are fixed by the system, and they can be used as required.

The codes 02, 04, 99, 20 through 29, and 971 are available for variable price or weight items. In order to use any of these codes for PLU items, the parameters listed below have to be defined.

Starting Digit 02 (sub-folder): These parameters also apply to Item Codes 04, 99, 20 through 29, and 971.

Code in Use: This parameter specifies that a variable weight or price be embedded in the UPC number.

PCDV Required: This parameter provides the option of specifying that a price check digit is required. When set to Yes, price check digit verification is required.

Price [] or Weight [x]: This parameter defines the embedded amount in the barcode as weight or price. When set to Yes, the amount is weight. When set to No, the amount is price.

Digits in Price: This parameter specifies the greatest number of digits in the UPC price or weight.

Decimal Places: This parameter specifies the number of decimal places in the price or weight.

Starting Digit 04: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 99: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 20: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 21: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 22: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 23: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 24: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 25: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 26: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 27: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 28: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 29: Same parameters as above.

Starting Digit 971: Same parameters as above.

Fuel Parameters

Fuel in the System: This parameter provides the option to enable fuel in the system. (Yes/No)

Maximum Dollar for Pre-Pay: This parameter specifies the maximum dollar amount acceptable for pre-pay fuel transactions.

PFS Number: This parameter specifies the Petrol File Server number. The range is 0 to 999.

Pump Test Tank Number Flag: This parameter is reserved for future development.

Pre-Pay Department Code: This parameter identifies the appropriate department to assign Pre-pay transactions.

External Device Number: Currently, this parameter is used to indicate that system (pump) transactions are actually generated by PumpServ, and NOT a POS terminal. This option must have an entry other than 0 (zero). In the future there will be options to have more than one external device connected. Valid range 0 to 999.

Uncollected Change Department: This parameter identifies the department to assign change left by customers.

Use DCOM to Connect to PumSRV (Default is to use TCPCOM): This parameter is reserved for future development.

Stand-Alone Fuel Front Office: This parameter specifies that the fuel system is a stand-alone system versus a fuel system integrated with a MFS.

Drive Off

Drive Off Car Make Flag: This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Make' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

Drive Off Car Color Flag: This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Color' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

Drive Off Plate Number Flag: This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Plate' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

Drive Off Year Flag: This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Model' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

Technical Parameters

Number of Months to Keep Packages History: This parameter is related to Code Distribution, the application that automatically distributes and performs software upgrades to the POS terminals. This parameter specifies the number of months after which a software upgrade package will be deleted from the 'Done' or 'Rejected' folder on the system. (A Software Upgrade Package is moved to 'Done' after upgrade is completed.) Valid range is 3 to 36 months. The default is 3 months.

V7 API Calls Update SQL: This parameter provides the option of updating both QDX and SQL databases when third party applications are used. When set to Yes, both databases will be updated.

PC to Use as PCCS Server: This parameter specifies the PC (for example, MFS1, MFS2, or LFS3) to be used as the PCCS communication server.

Host CCMS (Club Card Maintenance Server) Type: This parameter specifies the host data warehousing service. Options are None, Corema, Frys VIP Club or OEM.

Local CCMS (Club Card Maintenance Server) Type: This parameter specifies the local Club Card Maintenance Server type. Options are None, Corema, Frys VIP Club, or OEM.

PC to Use as CCMS Server: This parameter specifies the primary PC (for example, MFS1, MFS2, or LFS3) through which the two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled.

2nd PC to use as CCMS Server: This parameter specifies the PC (for example, MFS1, MFS2, or LFS3) through which the two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled, in the event that the primary server fails.

Port Number: This parameter specifies the logical port number that opens the communications socket with the CCMS server.

CCMS Alias in HOSTS File: This parameter specifies a text description of the PC server. This alias can be retrieved from the HOST file. The alias, together with the PC's IP address, are stored in the HOST file.

Eldat on System: This parameter enables the Eldat shelf-edge labels on the system.

Electronic Payments

StoreLine EPS

CC for Overrideable Decline: This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when overriding a StoreLine EPS payment decline (e.g., Exceeds Limit).

StoreLine EPS Payment Provider: The parameter defines the StoreLine EPS Payment Provider. Payment provider options are None, PLD for Ingenico, MTX for Hypercom, KC for Kincaid or EPS for Concord.

Auth File Directory on the Server: This field provides the path to the directory where the authorization files (xxx.Auth.dat and xxxSNF.dat files) are stored. The recommended location for these files is C:\PaymentMaster\.

Capture EBT GEN Number for Manual Account Entry: This parameter provides the option to capture EBT GEN Number for manual account entry. This parameter must be set to Yes.

Allow Off-line Gift Card Activation: This parameter should be set to No. (Reserved for future use.)

Gift Card Activation Tender: This parameter should be left blank. (Reserved for future use.)

General Parameters

IP Address to Connect: This parameter specifies the IP address of the EFT Controller. (Reserved for future use.)

Port Number to Use: This parameter specifies the TCP/IP port of the EFT Controller. Valid range 0 to 9999. (Reserved for future use.)

Timeout (Mili Seconds): This parameter specifies the timeout in mili-seconds for the communication link between the EFT controller and MFS1. The recommended value is 60 mili-seconds. Valid range is 0 to 9999.

Store Information

Store Name: This parameter specifies the Store Name (up to 28 characters). This name displays on all screens and reports.

Store Number: This parameter specifies the Store Number (range 0 to 60000). This number displays on screens and reports.

Division Number: This parameter provides the option to specify a Division Number (range 0 to 9999), for informational purposes.

Store Address: This parameter provides the option to enter the store address (up to 5 line of text), for informational purposes.

Store VAT Number: This parameter provides the option to specify a Store VAT Number for informational purposes.

Manager Name: This parameter provides the option to enter a manager's name for informational purposes.

Store Telephone: This parameter provides the option to enter a store telephone number for informational purposes.

Country: This parameter provides the option to select the country from a dropdown list for informational purposes.

2

POS Setup

This chapter covers the options you need to set up the POS terminals.

There are setups for POS terminal hardware configuration as well as functionality.

In this chapter:

POS Configuration,
page 2-3

POS Parameters,
page 2-29

Card Program, page 2-50

**Member Card &
Promotions,** page 2-63

Trading Stamps,
page 2-76

Coupons Parameters,
page 2-81

Restricted Sales Options,
page 2-99

POS Receipt Setup,
page 2-146

POS Keyboards,
page 2-175

POS Configuration

Use the POS Configuration options to set up and define a POS terminal, keyboard layout, receipt printing and peripheral equipment connection.

POS Configuration

- **To define or edit a POS terminal configuration**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Configuration, and again POS Configuration. The POST Configuration list appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Post Configuration' window with a menu bar (Exit, Report, New, Edit, Delete, End) and a toolbar. Below the toolbar is a 'Go to:' field and a sort indicator 'In POS No. Ascending'. The main area contains a table with the following data:

POS No.	POS Type	Active Till	Scale Type	Display	Printer Type	Monitor Type	Touch Screen Type
1	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☐					
2	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☐	None	No	None	VGA Color	None
3	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☐	None	No	None	VGA Color	None
5	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☒					
6	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☐	None	No	None	VGA Color	None
7	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☐					
8	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☒					
10	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☒					
17	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☐	None	No	None	VGA Color	None
19	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☒					
20	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☒					
22	TeamPOS & TeamCOM	☒					

At the bottom of the window are navigation buttons (Previous, First, Last, Next) and 'Copy' and 'Close' buttons. The status bar at the very bottom shows: ADMIN Ready Ready INS SCRL NUM CAPS 9/6/2002 6:57 AM Ver: 8.4.2.50.

- 2 Double-click on the required POS number, or highlight it and select *Edit*. The POST Configuration tabbed dialog box appears.
- 3 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

General Tab

Property	Description
Receipt Options area:	
Header/Footer	Select the header/footer to print on customer receipts from the dropdown list. For more details, see page 2-149.
Graphic Logo	Select the graphic logo to print on receipts. Logos print above the header message on receipts. Logos are optional. For more details, see page 2-146.

Property	Description
Print VAT Receipt	Select this parameter to print a VAT (Value Added Tax) receipt.
Cashier Queue Length area:	
Prompt cashier every nn minutes	Select how often to trigger the cashier prompt. When prompted, cashier enters number of customers in the line.
Alert when count is	Enter a queue (line) length count. When the cashier enters a count equal to or greater than this number, an alert is transmitted to the back office.
Amounts in Cash Drawer area:	
Minimum	Enter the amount to trigger the minimum-in-drawer control check.
Control Check	The control check to display when the cash in drawer amount is equal to or less than, the minimum amount specified.
Maximum	Enter the amount to trigger the 'Assistance' message on the POS terminal. Whenever the total of all participating tenders meets or exceeds this amount, the Assistance message appears on the cashier display.

Property	Description
Control Check	The control check to display when the cash in drawer amount is equal to or more than, the maximum amount specified.
General options area:	
Checkout Bank	If applicable, specify the checkout bank. Checkout banks are optional logical or physical groups of checkouts. Information gathered from checkout banks is used in various reports. For more details on checkout banks see page 2-22.
Keyboard type	Specify the required keyboard type as set up in Keyboard Programming.
Debug mode	Indicate whether the terminal should operate in debug mode Yes or No.
Print text to Transaction File	Select this to see text transactions in the Electronic Journal.
Prompt for Bagger ID	Select this parameter to enable cashiers to enter the Bagger ID when the <i>Total</i> key is pressed. Once the Bagger ID is entered, the prompt does not display again within the transaction. For more information, see the <i>POS Terminal User's Guide</i> .
Till Options Area:	

Property	Description
Till Profile	Select the appropriate till profile (e.g., Coffee, pharmacy, invoice, docking, etc.) from the dropdown list. This parameter allows you to customize POS menu selections by terminal type.
Till Type	Select the appropriate till type from the dropdown list. This information does not affect POS functionality. It is for informational purposes and written to the Transaction Log (TLOG).
Self Checkout Area: Self Checkout Type	Select the appropriate Self Checkout terminal type. Options are: • NCR Scot • PSI • None
Self Checkout Cashier	Select the cashier assigned to the Self Checkout terminal.
Self Checkout POS No.	Enter the designated Self Checkout POS terminal number.

WinPOS H/W Tab

Property	Description
General area:	
Generate sound from	Select from <i>Keyboard</i> , <i>PC Speaker</i> or <i>Both</i> .
Battery Backup	Select this option if a backup battery pack is installed.
Keyboard Area:	

Property	Description
Keyboard type	Select the appropriate keyboard type. Options are: • Standard • ICL Post KBD • ICL Table KBD • SNIKEY • DynaKey
2X20 Keyboard Display	Select to enable, if this LED-type display is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Keyboard driver.
Drawer Area:	
Drawer type	Select from <i>None</i> , <i>Basic</i> or <i>Connected to printer</i> .
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Cash Drawer driver.
Scale area:	
Port	Select the appropriate port.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Scale driver.
Type	The type of scale being used at this POS.

Property	Description
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Data bits	Select the required bits.
Parity	Select from the available options:
Display constant weight	When selected, the weight is always displayed on the cashier's display, even when there is zero weight.
Scanner 1 area:	
Port	Enter the port number to which the scanner is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Scanner driver.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Parity	Select from the available options
Scanner 2 area:	
Port	Enter the port number to which the scanner is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Scanner driver.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Parity	Select from the available options
Data bits	Select the required bits.

Note:

If necessary, refer to your scanner and scale documentation for the appropriate hardware settings.

Customer Display area:	
Type	Select the display unit type from the dropdown list.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.

Property	Description
Port	Enter the port number to which the customer display unit is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Customer Display driver.
Printer area:	
Type	Select the appropriate printer from the list.
Baud Rate	Select from the available options
Port	Enter the port number to which the customer printer is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Printer driver.
MICR Reader in use	(Magnetic Ink Check Reader) Select to enable.
Printer with partial cut	Select to enable the partial cut feature on the printer.
	Note: The printer must be able to support this feature.
Check flip feature	Select to enable the check flip feature, an option that endorses the back of the check, flips the check and prints the front of the check.
	Note: The printer must be able to support this feature.

Note:

If you set up a non-WinPOS printer using the *WinPOS H/W* tab in the dialog box, you must set the port in the printer area.

If you are using a DOS system (that is, a Version 7 system) the printer must be connected to the Port 3 socket. The default software settings for v.7 are automatically set to Baud Rate 9600 and Port 3.

Non WinPOS 1 Tab

Post Configuration

POS Number: POS Type: ☐ Active till

General | WinPOS HW | **Non WinPOS 1** | Non WinPOS 2 | Auth. - EFT - I/F | E-Ticket - OPOS

Screen

Type:

Touch Screen type:

Customer Display

Customer Display:

☐ 2x20 Keyboard Display

Drawer

☐ Use Drawer

☐ Drawer connected to printer

Printer

Type:

☐ MICR Reader in use

General

Generate 'beep' sound from:

Port for print commands:

☐ Battery Backup

Navigation: [Back] [Forward] [OK] [Cancel] [Apply]

Property	Description
Screen area:	
Type	Select the appropriate type.
Touch Screen type	Set to <i>None</i> , if not using a touch screen. To enable soft keys, select the appropriate option (<i>SNIKEY</i> or <i>DynaKey</i>).
Customer Display area:	
Customer Display	Select <i>Yes</i> if a customer display is connected.
2x20 Keyboard Display	Select to enable, if this LED-type display is connected.

Property	Description
Drawer area:	
Use Drawer	Select to enable the cash drawer.
Drawer connected to printer	If applicable, select to enable.
Printer area:	
Type	Select the appropriate printer from the list.
MICR Reader in use	(Magnetic Ink Check Reader) Select to enable.
General area:	
Generate 'beep' sound from	Select from <i>Keyboard</i> , <i>PC Beep</i> , <i>Keyboard & PC</i> or <i>Both</i> .
Port for print commands	Select from the dropdown list.
Battery Backup	Select this option if a backup battery pack is installed.

Non WinPOS 2 Tab

Post Configuration

POS Number: POS Type: ☒ Active till

General | WinPOS HW | Non WinPOS 1 | **Non WinPOS 2** | Auth. - EFT - I/F | E-Ticket - OPOS

Scanner

Baud Rate: None

Bits: 8

Parity: None

☐ Handshake

Scale

Type: 9000

Port: Com2

Baud Rate: 2400

IRQ: 3

☐ Display Weight on TeamPOS

Navigation:

Property	Description
Scanner area:	
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Bits	Select the required bits.
Parity	Select from the available options:
Handshake	Select this parameter to establish DTR (Data Terminal Ready) type handshake.
Scale area:	
Type	The type of scale being used at this POS.
Port	Select the appropriate port.

Property	Description
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
IRQ	Select the appropriate option. Refer to scale documentation for the possible interrupt requests. Beware of IRQ conflicts with other peripherals.
Display Weight on TeamPOS	If a scale is connected, optionally select this parameter to show item weight on the cashier's display. The number of items (top right corner of screen) cannot be displayed if you use this option.

Auth – Apt - EFT

Post Configuration

POS Number: POS Type: ☐ Active till

General | WinPOS HW | Non WinPOS 1 | Non WinPOS 2 | **Auth. - EFT - I/F** | E-Ticket - OPOS

Authorization

Type:
 Port:
 Baud Rate:

Interfaces

Type:
 Port:
 Baud Rate:

EFT

Location: ☐ Allow Reconciliation

Host's IP address: . . .

Host's Port number:

EFT Application program Version:

EFT Application parameters Version:

PinPad Unit type:

Property	Description
Authorization area:	
Type	Select the option • None • SMT • NTN • EFT
Port	Select the appropriate comm. port
Baud Rate	Select the required baud rate. Type in the baud rate according to the device.

Property	Description
Interfaces area:	
Type	Select the appropriate option: • None • Zinetix • Catalina • Catalina Local Broadcast • Catalina Global Broadcast
Port (APT)	Select the appropriate comm. port.
Baud Rate	Select the baud rate.
EFT area:	
EFT Location	This is a unique ID number for the POS terminal. During EFT transactions, this location number is transmitted to the bank.
Allow Reconciliation	Allows the store to reconcile and balance the figures according to the store's records, with information from the bank.
Host's IP address	Enter the Host's IP address.
Host's Port number	Enter the Host's port number.
EFT Application program Version	Enter the EFT Application Program Version level.
EFT Application parameters Version	Enter the EFT Application Parameters Version level.

E-Ticket - OPOS

Post Configuration

POS Number: 2 POS Type: TeamPOS & TeamCOM ☐ Active till

General WinPOS HW Non WinPOS 1 Non WinPOS 2 Auth. - EFT - I/F E-Ticket - OPOS

E-Ticket

☐ E-Ticket Active Virtual POS Number Virtual Cashier Number

OPOS

OPOS Printer Driver Name: OPOS Line Display Driver Name: OPOS Drawer Driver Name: OPOS Scanner Driver Name: OPOS Scale Driver Name: OPOS MICR Driver Name: OPOS MSR Driver Name: OPOS Keyboard Driver Name: OPOS KeyLock Driver Name:

☐ Use OPOS MICR ☐ Use OPOS MSR ☐ Use OPOS KeyLock

OK Cancel Apply

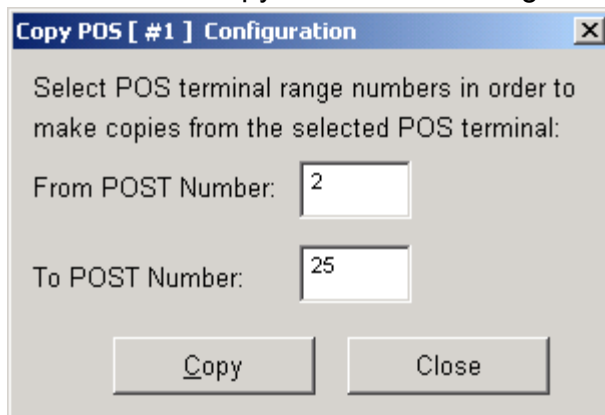
Property	Description
E-Ticket area:	
E-Ticket Active	Select this parameter to enable the Electronic Ticket (E-Ticket) feature.
Virtual POS Number	Enter the number for the designated virtual E-ticket POS terminal. E-ticket transactions are logged to this POS terminal, for tracking and reporting purposes.
Virtual Cashier Number	Enter the number for the designated virtual cashier. E-ticket transactions are logged to this cashier, for tracking and reporting

Property	Description
	purposes.
OPOS area:	
OPOS Printer Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Printer Driver.
OPOS Line Display Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Line Display Driver.
OPOS Drawer Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Cash Drawer Driver.
OPOS Scanner Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Scanner Driver.
OPOS Scale Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Scale Driver.
OPOS MICR Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS MICR Driver.
Use OPOS MICR	Select for OPOS MICR driver.
OPOS MSR Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS MSR (Magnetic Stripe Reader) Driver.
Use OPOS MSR	Select for OPOS MSR driver.
OPOS Keyboard Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Keyboard Driver.
OPOS Keylock Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Keylock Driver.
Use OPOS Keylock	Select for OPOS Keylock driver.

Copying a POS Configuration to Other Terminals

Use this timesaving option to copy a terminal's configuration to other terminals. Should some POS terminals require different characteristics or settings, edit them separately, as required.

- **To copy a POS configuration to a range of terminals**
- 1 In the POS Configuration list screen, highlight the POS number to copy.
 - 2 Click *Copy*. A pop-up screen prompts you to enter the range of terminals to copy the selected configuration to.



This example will copy the configuration of POS number 1 to terminals 2-25

- 3 Enter the required *From POS* and *To POS* range, and then click *Copy*. The selected range of terminals appears in the list screen. Each terminal will have the identical configuration as the source POS. (In the example above, POS number 1.)
- 4 If required, edit the configuration of the newly created terminals.

Checkout Bank Groups

Checkout Bank Groups are logical or physical groups of POS terminals. A typical store may consist of a main row of checkouts (*front end*), as well as various satellite terminals located in different areas of the store.

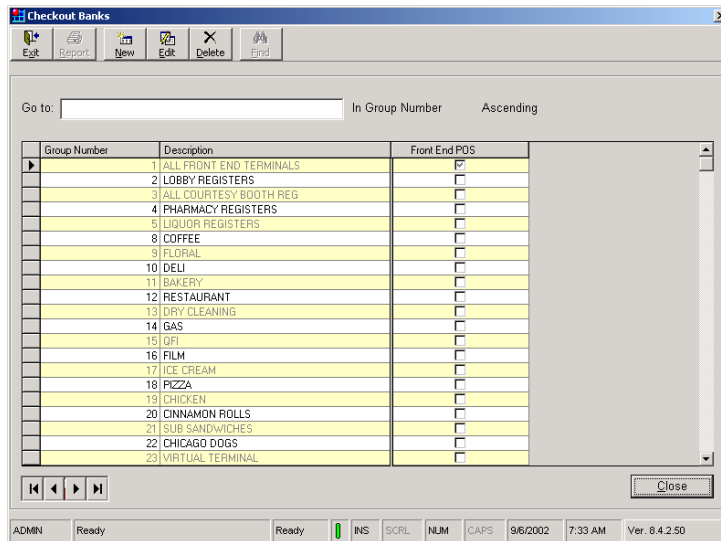
The Checkout Bank Group option lets you set up groups and give them names or descriptions to suit your environment. Use this option together with Cashier Maintenance.

Checkout Banks are used for:

- Assigning Opening Loans to groups of cashiers (or POS terminals)
- Assigning Tax Rates to a specific group of POS terminals.
- Statistical reporting purposes
- Preventing cashier sign-on to specific groups

➤ **To set up a checkout bank group**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Configuration, and then Checkout Bank Groups. The Checkout Bank Groups list appears.



- 2 Double-click on the required Group number, or highlight it and select *Edit*. The Checkout Bank Groups tabbed dialog box appears.

Checkout Banks

Checkout Bank Group No.: 1

Description: ALL FRONT END TERMINALS

Max percentage of tills to upgrade Simultaneously: 1 ☒ Front End Terminals

Linked POS | Open Loan Amount | Taxes | Q-Load And Update File Parameters

Linked POS

Unlink POS

Unlink All

OK Cancel Apply

- 3 Enter an appropriate checkout bank number and description.
- 4 Enter the maximum percentage of POS terminals to be upgrades for this checkout bank at one time, through Code Distribution.
- 5 To indicate that this checkout bank is in the *front end*, select the Front End Terminals option.
- 6 Click *Apply* to save.
- 7 To link POS terminals to the checkout bank, click *Link POS*. The POS selector dialog box appears.
- 8 Select the POS terminals to link and click *OK*.
- 9 To unlink a POS terminal, highlight it and click *Unlink*, or to unlink all the terminals, click *Unlink All*.
- 10 To save the checkout bank, click *Apply*.

Open Loan Amount Tab

If you have set up opening loans for tenders, you can see them (and the amounts) on the Open Loan Amount tab. For more details, see *Tender Maintenance* in the *Office User's Guide*.

The screenshot shows the 'Checkout Banks' dialog box with the 'Open Loan Amount' tab selected. The 'Linked POS' tab is also visible. The 'Open Loan Amount' tab displays a table with two columns: 'Tender Id' and 'Description'. The table contains two rows: one for 'Cash' with an amount of 196.00, and one for 'Foodstamps' with an amount of 50.00. The 'Amount' column is highlighted in yellow. Below the table is a large empty rectangular area. The dialog box has a title bar 'Checkout Banks' and a close button. It also has fields for 'Checkout Bank Group No.' (1), 'Description' (ALL FRONT END TERMINALS), and 'Max percentage of tills to upgrade Simultaneously' (1). There is a checkbox for 'Front End Terminals' which is checked. At the bottom are buttons for 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

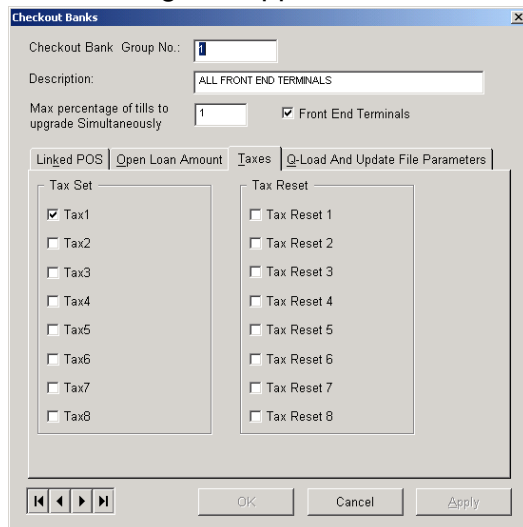
Tender Id	Description	Amount
1	Cash	196.00
4	Foodstamps	50.00

Taxes Tab

The Taxes tab allows you to establish different tax rates and tax reversal conditions by checkout bank groups. For example, different tax rates may apply only to satellite terminals in a food court or deli restaurant.

➤ **To define tax rates by checkout bank group**

- 1 Select the Taxes tab on the Checkout Banks dialog box. The Taxes dialog box appears.



- 2 Select the checkboxes next to the tax rates that you want to enable for the selected checkout bank group.

Note:

For more details on defining tax rates, see *Tax Rates* in the *Office User's Guide*.

- 3 Select the checkboxes next to the tax rates that you want to reverse for the selected checkout bank group.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Q-Load and Update File Parameters Tab

This tab enables you to define parameter for loading and updating POS terminal files by selected checkout bank groups.

- **To set up POS terminal updates by checkout bank groups**
- 1 Select the Q-Load and Update File Parameters tab on the Checkout Banks dialog box. The Q-Load and Update File Parameters dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Checkout Banks' dialog box with the 'Q-Load And Update File Parameters' tab selected. The dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Checkout Bank Group No.:** A text box containing the value '1'.
- Description:** A text box containing the value 'ALL FRONT END TERMINALS'.
- Max percentage of tills to upgrade Simultaneously:** A text box containing the value '1'.
- Front End Terminals:** A checked checkbox.
- Linked POS:** A tab button.
- Open Loan Amount:** A tab button.
- Taxes:** A tab button.
- Q-Load And Update File Parameters:** The active tab button.
- q-load Start time:** A time picker showing '03:00'.
- q-load Frequency:** A text box containing the value '1'.
- q-load Prompt time out:** A text box containing the value '60'.
- Navigation buttons:** A set of four small buttons (back, forward, etc.) and three larger buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

- 2 Set the properties as described below.

Parameter	Description
Q-load Start time	Specify the start time (military time) of the q-load process on the POS terminals. The system default is 03:00.
Q-load Frequency	Enter the frequency (number of tickets) for the prompt about the q-load process. This POS prompt will be redisplayed on the POS terminal after 'X' tickets.
Q-load Prompt time out	Enter the prompt timeout, in seconds. The q-load prompts will timeout after 'X' seconds.

- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

POS Parameters

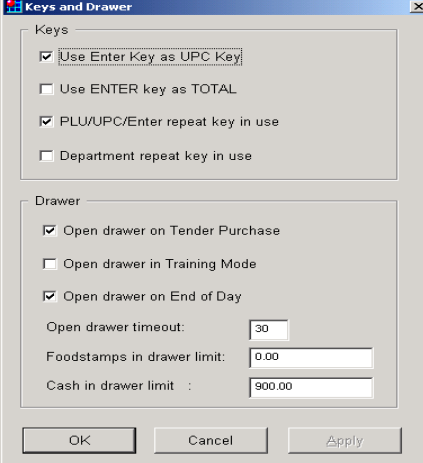
This section enables you to set parameters that define which functions are available on the POS terminals, and how they perform in various circumstances.

Keys and Drawer Parameters

The keys and drawer parameters enable you to define the function on the *Enter* key on the keyboard, and when the cash drawer may open.

➤ **To define keys and cash drawer parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Keys and Drawer. The Keys and Drawer dialog box appears.



The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Keys and Drawer". It contains two main sections: "Keys" and "Drawer".

Keys Section:

- ☒ Use Enter Key as UPC Key
- ☐ Use ENTER key as TOTAL
- ☒ PLU/UPC/Enter repeat key in use
- ☐ Department repeat key in use

Drawer Section:

- ☒ Open drawer on Tender Purchase
- ☐ Open drawer in Training Mode
- ☒ Open drawer on End of Day
- Open drawer timeout:
- Foodstamps in drawer limit:
- Cash in drawer limit :

At the bottom are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

2 Select the appropriate parameters, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Keys area:	
Use Enter Key as UPC Key	When <i>Enter</i> is pressed, the check digit for the item will be calculated and entered automatically.
Use Enter Key as TOTAL	When <i>Enter</i> is pressed, the total value of the ticket will be calculated and the ticket receipt will be printed.
PLU/UPC/Enter repeat key in use	When <i>Enter</i> is pressed, the previously entered item will be repeated.
Department repeat key in use	When <i>Enter</i> is pressed, the previously entered department code will be entered for the new item.
Drawer area:	
Open drawer on Tender Purchase	The cash drawer will open when customer requests cash back on a Tender purchase, i.e., giving cash in exchange for a paycheck or when using a debit card.
Open drawer in Training mode	The cash drawer can be opened when the terminal is in training mode.
Open drawer on End of Day	The cash drawer will automatically open when the End of Day process begins.
Open drawer timeout	The amount of time in seconds that the cash drawer may remain open before an alert will sound at the POS terminal.
Food Stamps in drawer limit	Specify the maximum total sum of Food Stamps allowed in the Cash Drawer. If this value is exceeded, the Food Stamps icon will display on the Cashier's Display.
Cash in drawer limit	Specify the maximum amount of cash allowed

Parameter	Description
	in the cash drawer. Once exceeded, the Dollar icon is displayed on the Cashier's Display. A list of Cashiers who have exceeded this amount appears in the Over Limit Cashier's Report.
	Note: Optionally the system may be configured to issue a beep (10 times) at each cash tender, once the cash in drawer limit has been exceeded. Refer to parameter, <i>Beep for Cash in Drawer Limit</i> , located in the General System Parameter Tree under \POST\Operational\Drawer, for details.

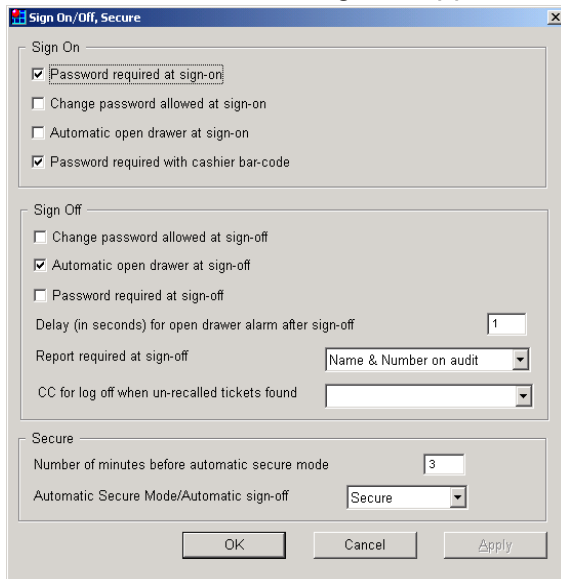
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Sign On/Off and Secure Parameters

The Sign On/Off parameters enable you to define the functions related to cashier sign on or sign off, for example, whether the cashier must enter a password when they sign on. The Secure parameters enable you to define the period of time, during which the cashier has not used the keyboard that may elapse before secure mode will be automatically activated. In addition, you can define other functions that will occur when secure mode is entered automatically.

➤ **To define Sign On/Off and Secure parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Sign On/Off and Secure. The Sign On/Off and Secure dialog box appears.



The dialog box titled "Sign On/Off, Secure" contains three sections: "Sign On", "Sign Off", and "Secure".

- Sign On:**
 - ☒ Password required at sign-on
 - ☐ Change password allowed at sign-on
 - ☐ Automatic open drawer at sign-on
 - ☒ Password required with cashier bar-code
- Sign Off:**
 - ☐ Change password allowed at sign-off
 - ☒ Automatic open drawer at sign-off
 - ☐ Password required at sign-off
 - Delay (in seconds) for open drawer alarm after sign-off: 1
 - Report required at sign-off: Name & Number on audit
 - CC for log off when un-recalled tickets found: (empty dropdown)
- Secure:**
 - Number of minutes before automatic secure mode: 3
 - Automatic Secure Mode/Automatic sign-off: Secure

Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Apply.

2 Select the appropriate parameters, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Sign On area:	
Password required at sign-on	Select this parameter to require cashiers to enter their password when signing-on to a POS terminal.
Change password allowed at sign-on	Select this parameter to provide an option for the cashier to change password at Sign-on. The cashier can bypass the password change prompt by pressing <i>Enter</i> .
Automatic open drawer at sign-on	Select this parameter to trigger the cash drawer to open at Sign-on.
Password required with cashier bar-code	Select this parameter to require the cashier to enter a password when signing-on with a scannable Cashier's card.
Sign-Off area:	
Change password allowed at sign-off	Select this parameter to provide an option for the cashier to change password at Sign-off. The cashier can bypass the password change by pressing <i>Enter</i> .
Automatic open drawer at sign-off	Select this parameter to trigger the cash drawer to open at Sign-off.
Password required at sign-off	Select this parameter to require cashiers to enter their password when signing-off at the POS terminal.
Delay (in seconds) for open drawer alarm after sign-off	Specify the number of seconds that the cash drawer can be opened after a sign-off, before triggering an alarm.

Parameter	Description
Report required at sign-off	Select what is to print on the receipt when a cashier is signing-off. Options include: • No Report Printed • Print X-Read (Post Report) on receipt • Print Name & Number of Cashier Signing-off on receipt • Print X-Read on Audit • Print Name & Number on Audit
CC for log off when un-recalled tickets found	From the dropdown list, select the Control Check to display when logging off with un-recalled (suspended) sales orders.
Secure area:	
Number of minutes before automatic secure mode	Specify the number of minutes that the keyboard can remain unused before secure mode will be automatically activated.
Automatic Secure Mode/Automatic Sign-off	Select an option from the <i>Automatic Secure Mode/Automatic sign-off</i> dropdown list to specify whether the POST changes to Secure mode or Sign-off mode when the predefined number of minutes specified above (<i>Number of Minutes before Automatic Secure Mode</i>) elapses. Options are: • Secure • Sign Off

3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

WIC Options

These parameters relate to WIC (Women, Infants and Children). WIC checks can be used only by women with children and are considered a type of Tender. A customer must declare their intention to pay with WIC checks before the first item is entered.

➤ **To set up WIC Options**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then WIC Options. The WIC Options dialog box appears.

WIC Options

WIC Options

WIC prompt options: Prompt for Exp. Date

WIC print options: Print Exp. Date

CC for exceeding WIC check amount: 77

CC for exceeding WIC expiry date: 77

CC for bypassing WIC check amount: 0

CC for bypassing WIC expiry date: 0

☐ WIC issue date: [v]=issue date []=expiry date

WIC validity period (in days): 7

☐ Allow WIC tender without validation

OK Cancel Apply

2 Select the options, as described below.

Parameter	Description
WIC Prompt Options	This field determines whether the system prompts for WIC check amount and expiration date. Select one of the following: • No extra prompt • Prompt for amount • Prompt for expiration date • Prompt for amount and expiration date Note: If you select prompt for expiry dates and then select '<i>WIC issue date</i>' below, the POS terminal prompts for issue date.
WIC Print Options	Select the optional WIC data that will print on the receipt. Options include: • No extra print • Print amount • Print expiration date • Print amount and expiration date Note: If you select print options for expiry dates and then select '<i>WIC issue date</i>' below, the POS terminal prints issue date.
CC for exceeding WIC check amount	Enter the number of the control check to display at the time of sale when the total transaction amount is higher than the WIC check amount declared at the beginning of the transaction.

Parameter	Description
CC for exceeding WIC expiry date	Enter the number of the control check to display when the date of the WIC check has expired.
CC for bypassing WIC check amount	Enter the number of the control check to be triggered if no WIC amount is entered.
CC for bypassing WIC expiry date	Enter the number of the control check to display when no WIC expiration date is entered.
WIC issue date: [v] = issue date [] = expiry date	Specify the method of validating a WIC check, either by Issue Date or Expiry Date. When selecting the Issue Date, the Validity period must be specified in the <i>WIC Validity Period Parameter</i> , below.
WIC validity period (in days)	Specify the number of days for which the WIC check is valid. This parameter takes effect only when selecting Issue Date in the <i>WIC Issue Date</i> parameter, above.
Allow WIC tender without validation	Select this parameter to enable authorized personnel to accept WIC checks as ordinary Tender without any validation procedures. If selected, all of the above WIC-related parameters are nullified.

3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Tax and Food Stamp Options

The Tax and Food Stamps Options dialog box enable you to define parameters relating to tax exemptions and reversals, and to define the functions that can be performed when food stamps are tendered.

➤ To set up Tax and Food Stamp Options

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Tax and Food Stamp Options. The Tax and Food Stamp Options tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Tax Option Tab

Tax options parameters can be defined to enable cashier to perform tax exemptions or reversals at the POS terminal. In additions, these parameters enable you to choose which tax rates may be reversed. Defining taxes is described in *Chapter 5, Database Management*, in the *Office User's Guide*.

Tax And Food Stamps Options

Tax Options | Food Stamps Options

Number of rates to accumulate amounts:

☒ Total ([]) or individual ([v]) tax on receipt

☒ Allow cashier to select specific tax for tax exempt

☒ Allow cashier to select specific tax for tax reversal

☐ Don't print tax report if tax is zero

Tax Rates For Tax Reversal

☒ Tax 1 ☐ Tax 2 ☐ Tax 3 ☐ Tax 4
☐ Tax 5 ☐ Tax 6 ☒ Tax 7 ☐ Tax 8

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Number of rates to accumulate amounts	Specify the number of tax rates to be support in the system (Up to 8 tax rates). If 0, no tax rates are accumulated, except for tax rate 1. If 8, all taxes with a tax rate are accumulated. If 1-7, the first 7 rates will used to accumulate taxable totals.
Total ([]) or individual ([v]) tax on receipt	Specify the method of printing taxes on the customer receipt, either by Total tax ([]) or by Individual rate ([V]). Select this checkbox to print taxes by individual rate on the receipt. Leave blank, to print the combined total tax on the receipt.

Parameter	Description
Allow cashier to select specific tax for tax exempt	Select this checkbox to allow the cashier to select a specific tax rate for tax exempt.
Allow cashier to select specific tax for tax reversal	Select this checkbox to allow the cashier to select a specific tax rate for tax reversal.
Don't print tax report if tax is zero	Select this checkbox to not print a tax report on the customer receipt if taxes charged is zero.
Tax Rates for Tax Reversal (Tax Rate 1 to Tax Rate 8)	Select the specific tax rates (1 to 8) eligible for tax reversal.

Food Stamp Options Tab

Food Stamps are considered as a tender type. Depending on local regulations, food stamps may have tax-exempt status. In addition, it may be against regulations to give change when payment is made with Food Stamps. The parameters on the Food Stamps Options tab enable you to define parameters to fulfill these requirements.

Tax And Food Stamps Options

Tax Options Food Stamps Options

Food Stamps tender: Foodstamps

☒ Any F/S eligible items paid with F/S is tax forgiven

☐ Any F/S tender forgive tax on all F/S Elig. items (NJ)

☐ Allow non whole-Dollar food stamps

☒ Allow non whole dollar EBT food stamps

☒ Print F/S subtotal on receipt if F/S tendered

☒ Limit F/S eligible to Bal. Due

☒ Forgive tax on vendor coupons if F/S tendered

☒ Display F/S total after F/S tender

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Food Stamp tender	From the dropdown list, select the Tender Type linked with Food Stamps. Options are Manual EBT Food Stamps or EBT Food Stamps.
Any F/S eligible items paid with F/S is tax forgiven	Select this parameter to forgive tax on food stamp eligible items that are purchased with Food Stamps.
Any F/S tender forgive tax on all F/S Eligible items (NJ)	Select this parameter to forgive ALL tax on food stamp eligible items when any part of a transaction is paid for with Food Stamps. This Food Stamp law is sometimes referred to as the New Jersey Food Stamp law.

Parameter	Description
Allow non whole dollar food stamps	Select this parameter to accept Food Stamps that have a non whole-dollar value, for example, \$ 5.79.
Allow non whole dollar EBT food stamps	Select this parameter to accept Food Stamps in the form of EBT (a type of credit card used for Food Stamps) that have a non whole-dollar value, for example \$ 25.97. No change is issued on these transactions.
Print F/S subtotal on receipt if F/S tendered	Select this parameter to print a F/S sub-total on receipt, when Food Stamps are tendered.
Limit F/S eligible to Balance Due	Select this parameter to prevent the amount of Food Stamps tendered from exceeding the total order due.
Forgive tax on vendor coupon if F/S tendered	Select this parameter to forgive tax on vendor coupons for items purchased with Food Stamps.
Display F/S total after F/S tender	Select this parameter to display a F/S sub-total (instead of the amount of Food Stamps Tendered) on the customer display, when Food Stamps are tendered. Leave this parameter blank to display the amount paid in Food Stamps on the customer display, when Food Stamps are tendered.

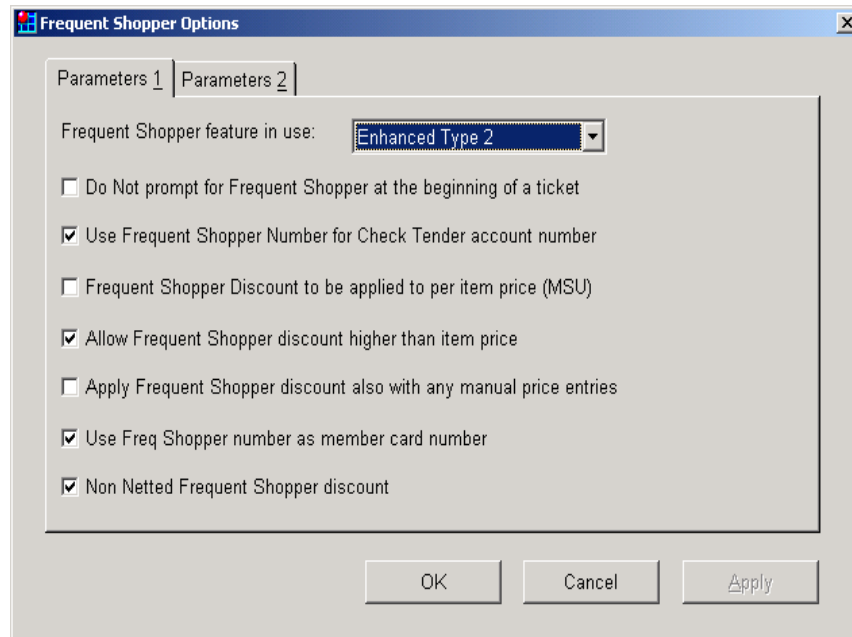
Frequent Shopper Options

The Frequent Shopper option is a basic form of a Loyalty Program comprising of a limited number of promotional options. The program operates by simply validating the customer number on the card and accordingly generating a reduced price.

➤ **To set up Frequent Shopper Options**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Frequent Shopper Options. The Frequent Shopper Options tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Frequent Shopper – Parameters 1 Tab



Parameter	Description
Frequent Shopper Feature in use	Select the appropriate Frequent Shopper option from the following dropdown list: • None – No Frequent Shopper features are available. • Regular – The Frequent Shopper card number must be entered (by swiping, scanning or keying) at the start of the ticket in order for Frequent Shopper discount to be given. The ticket displays the discount for each item.

Parameter	Description
	- Enhanced Type 1 – The discount for eligible items is displayed only at the end of the ticket. - Enhanced Type 2 – The Frequent Shopper card number can be entered at any time while the transaction is being rung up. However, the discount will only be displayed at the end of the ticket. If the card number is entered at the beginning of the ticket, the ticket displays the discount for each eligible item.
Do not prompt for Frequent Shopper at the beginning of the ticket	Select this parameter to not prompt for Frequent Shopper account number at the beginning of a sales transaction. The order will be registered as a regular transaction.
Use Frequent Shopper Number for Check Tender account number	Select this parameter to use the Frequent Shopper number as a Checking Account number, for writing and cashing checks. If a customer elects to pay by check, the account number does not have to be re-entered. The Frequent Shopper number entered at the start of the sale is used as the check cashing number. If this parameter is not selected, the POS terminal will prompt for an account number when a check is tendered.
Frequent Shopper Discount to be applied to per item price (MSU)	This parameter specifies the method of calculating discounted Multiple Selling Unit (MSU) items if sold separately. When this checkbox is selected, the Frequent Shopper discount is applied per item, for MSU items. For example, if an MSU consists of two items for \$10, the single item price would be \$5.

Parameter	Description
	The Frequent Shopper discount is applied to the single item. Therefore, if the Frequent Shopper discount is \$2, the single item price is \$3. If this checkbox is not selected, the Frequent Shopper discount is applied to the total MSU price of the combined items and then divided by the number of items to calculate the individual item's price. For example, if an MSU consist of two items for \$10, and the Frequent Shopper discount is \$2, the MSU would then be two items for \$8 and the single item price would be \$4.
Allow Frequent Shopper discount higher than item price	Select this parameter to allow the Frequent Shopper discount to exceed the price of the item. The shopper would get 'cash back' in addition to receiving the item, for which they would not be charged. Usually, this offer would be dependent on the shopper meeting a minimum purchase requirement.
Apply Frequent Shopper discount also with any manual price entries	Select this parameter to allow Frequent Shopper discounts to be applied to manual price entries.

Parameter	Description
Use Frequent Shopper number as member card number	Select this parameter to combine the features of a Frequent Shopper card with a Member card, to enable relevant benefits to be applied to both cards. The card number only has to be entered once to receive benefits from both cards.
Note: The card number must be defined in <i>Card Range Maintenance</i> as a Member Card.	
Non Netted Frequent Shopper discount	If this parameter is set to 'Yes', Frequent Shopper discounts will be included in sales. If set to 'No', Frequent Shopper discounts will be deducted from Sales. The non-netted amount will be tracked in the Department Report and the Expanded Department Report.

Frequent Shopper – Parameters 2

Frequent Shopper Options

Parameters 1 Parameters 2

Frequent Shopper Range From: 41000000000

Frequent Shopper Range To: 46999999999

Frequent Shopper minimum purchase amount: 0.00

Frequent Shopper description: FREQUENT SHOPPER#

Frequent Shopper merchandising feature: Text Line & Savings

Control Check for not meeting minimum purchase for F/S:

Control Check to bypass Frequent Shopper: None

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Frequent Shopper Range From:	Enter the minimum Frequent Shopper account number in the range. Each card number can include up to 13 digits.
Frequent Shopper Range To:	Enter the maximum Frequent Shopper account number in the range. Only Frequent shopper cards within the specified range will be recognized as Frequent shopper cards by the system.
Frequent Shopper minimum purchase amount	Enter the minimum purchase amount required for Frequent Shoppers, to be eligible for Frequent Shopper discounts.

Parameter	Description
Frequent Shopper description	Enter the name (description) of the Frequent Shopper program (e.g., Gold).
Frequent Shopper merchandising feature	Select the format for printing Frequent Shopper discounts on the customer receipt. Options include: • None – No information will appear on the ticket next to each discounted item. The discounts will only be displayed as subtotal at the end of the ticket. • Character – A character, for example an asterisk (*), that will appear next to each discounted item.) • Text Line - A text description for frequent shopper discounts, which will appear next to each discounted item. • Text Line & Savings - A text description and value of frequent shopper discount that will appear next to each discounted item, for example, 'You saved \$ 1.50'.
Control Check for not meeting minimum purchase for Frequent Shopper	From the dropdown list, select the Control Check to display when the minimum purchase amount for Frequent Shoppers is not met. This parameter enables an authorized person, for example, a supervisor, to give Frequent Shopper discounts, without the shopper having fulfilled the minimum purchase requirements.
Control Check to bypass Frequent Shopper	From the dropdown list, select the Control Check to display that allows authorized personnel to give Frequent Shopper discounts without a Frequent Shopper card number having been entered.

Card Program

A card program enables a store to donate a percentage of the total value of the ticket to a specified community charity. The charity is identified by means of a swiped or scanned card.

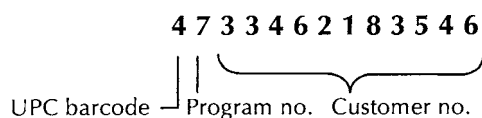
When the card number is entered in the POS terminal, the system tracks the card number and sales transaction in the Electronic Journal, for later retrieval by the host. At host level, the retailer calculates the percentage of the ticket value that is to be donated and identifies to which charity the money is to be donated.

Card Program Settings

The Card Program numbering sequence that appears on the card has a format that enables the system to determine the type of card, the specific program (that is, the particular charity the card is for) and the customer number.

4 7 3 3 4 6 2 1 8 3 5 4 6

UPC barcode — Program no. Customer no.

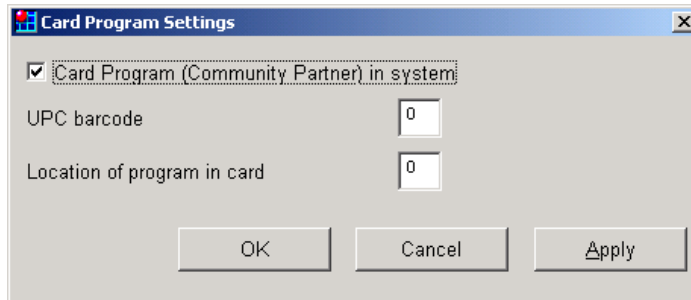


The UPC barcode is always 4, which denotes that it is a card, not a PLU item. The total number of digits comprising the card number is always 12 or 13.

Information about card program settings can be defined in the system.

➤ **To define the Card Program Settings**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Card Program and then Card Program Settings. The Card Program Settings dialog box appears.

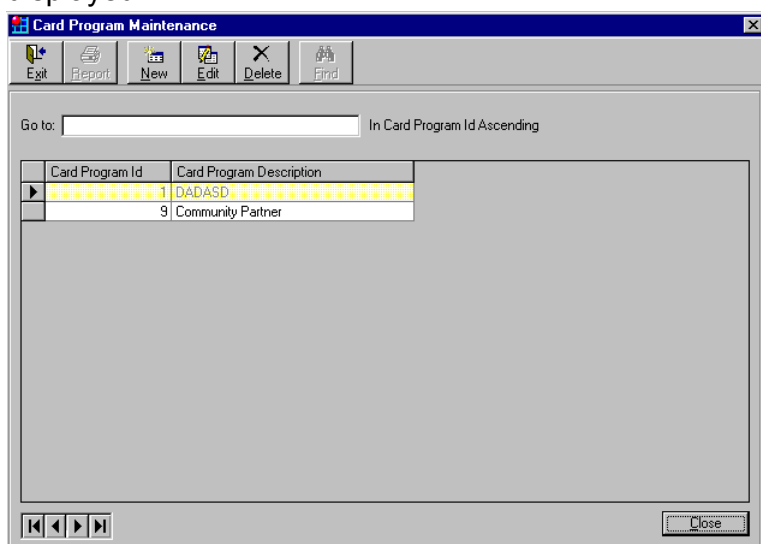


- 2 Select the *Card Program (Community Partner) in system* checkbox to enable the card program feature in the system.
- 3 Type the UPC number system (code) in the *UPC barcode* field. This number is usually 4.
- 4 Type the number that indicates the position of the program's identity number in the card number in the *Location of program in card* field.
- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Card Program Maintenance

Card Program Maintenance is used to define community card programs. In addition, it enables you to define the text that will appear on both the POS screen and the ticket, when the card program feature is used.

- **To access the card program maintenance parameters**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Card Program and then Card Program Maintenance. The Card Program Maintenance list is displayed.



Buttons are provided at the top of the window to enable new card programs to be defined, and existing programs to be edited or deleted.

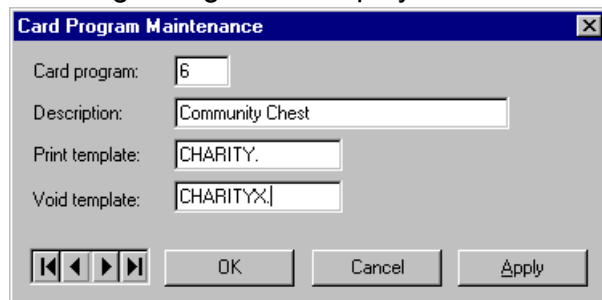
The list area of the window displays existing card programs and contains two fields, as follows:

Field	Description
Card Program Id	The identity number of the card program. This number is the same as the second number on the Card Program card. Refer to the page 2-50 for information about the Card Program number sequence.
Card Program Description	The name of the Card Program.

Adding a Card Program

➤ **To add a new card program**

- 1 From the Card Program Maintenance window click *New*. The following dialog box is displayed.

A screenshot of the 'Card Program Maintenance' dialog box. It has a title bar with the text 'Card Program Maintenance' and a close button. The dialog contains four text input fields: 'Card program:' with the value '6', 'Description:' with the value 'Community Chest', 'Print template:' with the value 'CHARITY.', and 'Void template:' with the value 'CHARITYX.'. At the bottom, there are four buttons: a set of navigation arrows (back, forward, etc.), 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

- 2 Enter a Card Program number and description.

- 3 Enter the appropriate template names in the *Print Template* and *Void Template* fields.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Note:

The print template name must be written in capital letters and must be identical to the name of the DOS template file, to ensure that the text is displayed on the POS terminal and printed on the receipt.

Editing a Card Program

- **To edit a card program**
- 1 From the Card Program Maintenance window, select the card program that you want to edit and click *Edit*. The Card Program Maintenance dialog box is displayed, as shown on the previous page.
 - 2 Make the required changes to the information and click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Deleting a Card Program

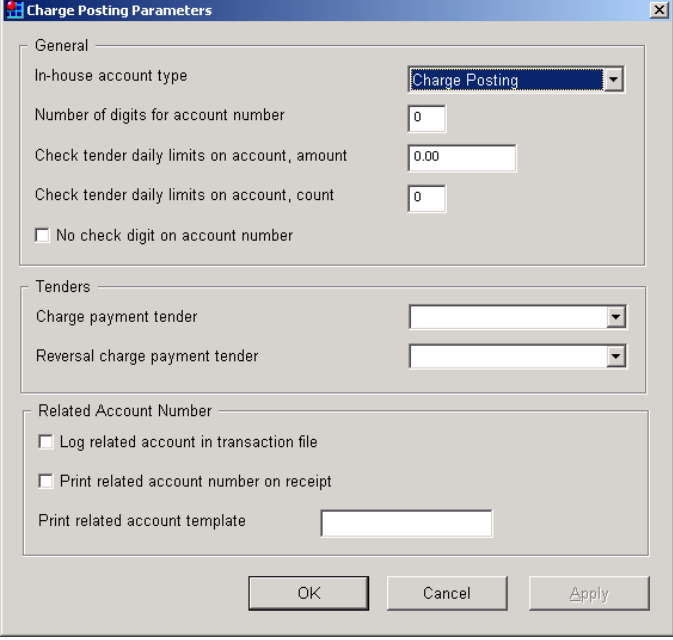
- **To delete a card program**
- 1 From the Card Program Maintenance window, select the program that you want to delete and click *Delete*. You are prompted to confirm the deletion.
 - 2 Click *Yes*. The program is deleted.

Charge Posting Parameters

Charge Posting is a third-party in-store credit system that enables shopper to 'post' a credit balance with the store, from which funds are drawn for purchases. Alternatively, store may provide a Customer Account system that enables shopper to 'charge' purchases, creating a debit balance, which is paid at the end of each month.

➤ **To define Charge Posting parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Charge Posting Parameters. The Charge Posting Parameters dialog box appears.



The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Charge Posting Parameters". It contains three main sections: "General", "Tenders", and "Related Account Number".

- General**:
 - "In-house account type" is a dropdown menu with "Charge Posting" selected.
 - "Number of digits for account number" is a text box containing "0".
 - "Check tender daily limits on account, amount" is a text box containing "0.00".
 - "Check tender daily limits on account, count" is a text box containing "0".
 - There is an unchecked checkbox labeled "No check digit on account number".
- Tenders**:
 - "Charge payment tender" is a dropdown menu.
 - "Reversal charge payment tender" is a dropdown menu.
- Related Account Number**:
 - There are two unchecked checkboxes: "Log related account in transaction file" and "Print related account number on receipt".
 - "Print related account template" is a text box.

At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

2 Select the appropriate parameters, as described below.

Parameter	Description
General area:	
In-house account type	Select the type of in-house type. Options are: • Charge Posting • Customer Account Charge Posting specifies a beginning sum from which the customer purchases are deducted. Customer Account defines customer purchases as cumulative, from 0 to the maximum predefined sum.
Number of digits for account number	Enter the maximum number of digits in the account number. Upon validation any different number of digits will prompt an error message.
Check tender daily limits on account, amount	Enter the maximum dollar amount allowed for a customer to charge per day.
Check tender daily limits on account, count	Enter the maximum number of charges allowed for a customer per day.
Note: The <i>Check tender daily limits on account, count</i> field is not currently enabled.	
No check digit on account number	Select this parameter if the Customer Account does not include a Check Digit.

Tenders area:

Parameter	Description
Charge payment tender	Select the Tender Type to track Customer Charge Accounts. This tender type will appear on the customer receipt and be tracked in reports.
Reversal charge payment tender	Select the Tender Type to track reversals of Customer Charge Account transactions.
Related Account Number area:	
Log related account in transaction file	Select this parameter to log the customer account number and transaction to the Electronic Journal.
Print related account number on receipt	Select this parameter to print the Customer Account number on the sales order receipt.
Print related account template	Specify the name of the template that will be printed when selecting <i>Yes</i> to the <i>Print related account number on receipt</i> parameter, listed above.
Note: The print template name must be written in capital letters and must be identical to the name of the DOS template file, to ensure that the text is displayed on the POS terminal and printed on the receipt.	

- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Discount and Account Options

These parameters relate to minimum purchase amount for receiving a discount. Discount is a function defined as a percentage of the price.

➤ **To set up Discount Options**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Discount Options. The Discount and Account Options dialog box appears.

Discount and Account Options

Discount Options

Minimum purchase amount for transaction discounts 0.00

Control Check for not meeting minimum purchase for disc 0

Account File Options

Number of digits for Charge Posting account numbers 0

Check tender daily limits on account, amount 0.00

Check tender daily limits on account, count 0

OK Cancel Apply

- 2 Select the appropriate parameters, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Discount Options area:	
Minimum purchase amount for transaction discounts	Enter the minimum sales order amount to qualify for a transaction discount (order discount) to take place at the POS terminal.
Control Check for not meeting minimum purchase for discount	The Control Check to display if the minimum purchase for discount is not met.
Account File Options area:	
Number of digits for Charge Posting account numbers	Enter the number of digits for charge posting account numbers.
Check tender daily limits on account, amount	Currently this field is not enabled.
Check tender daily limits on account, count	Currently this field is not enabled.

- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Customer Display Messages

The Customer Display Messages option is used to customize the messages appearing on the two-line customer display. Different messages can be programmed to display on the POS terminal when in a 'closed' state, as well as in a 'sales' state.

The POS Closed tab is used for editing the customer display in 'POS CLOSED' state, and the Next Customer tab is used for editing the customer display in 'NEXT CUSTOMER' (between sales transactions) state. There are four lines available for messages, however, if you are using a two-line display, only two messages can be displayed. Messages may consist of any alphanumeric character, and can be in upper or lower case.

➤ To program the Customer Display

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Customer Display Messages. The Customer Display Messages dialog box appears.

Customer Display Messages

POS CLOSED | NEXT CUSTOMER

Width (Note: if bigger than customer display width, message will scroll) 1

Line Text :

1	Welcome to Hilltop Steak House
2	
3	
4	

OK Cancel Apply

The *POS CLOSED* and *NEXT CUSTOMER* tabs look identical. They both allow you to enter up to 4 lines of text.

- 2 Using lines 1-4, type in the message for the 'POS CLOSED' state. (Maximum of 45 characters).
- 3 Enter the width of the message. The width entered must be at least the width of the message you type in, or it will not display correctly. If the width of the message is larger than the customer display width, the message will scroll.
- 4 Using lines 1-4, type in the message for the 'NEXT CUSTOMER' state. (Maximum of 45 characters).
- 5 Enter the width of the message. The width entered must be at least the width of the message you type in, or it will not display correctly. If the width of the message is larger than the customer display width, the message will scroll.
- 6 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Rounding Parameters

The Rounding Parameters are used to define the rules for rounding up or down, the balance due by the customer. This influences the change amount due to the customer. Rounding is normally, but not necessarily, applied to cash tenders.

➤ **To define Rounding parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Rounding Parameters. The Rounding Parameters dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Rounding Parameters' dialog box. It features a row of 10 input boxes for cents (0-9). Below this is a 'Round To' section with 10 input boxes, each containing a '0'. There is a checkbox labeled 'Rounding on total' which is currently unchecked. Below that is a 'Tender for rounding' dropdown menu showing 'CASH'. At the bottom are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

- 2 Type in the appropriate rounding value for each cent. For example: For one cent, you may decide to round *down* to zero. In this case, enter 0 under 1. To round *up* from 4 cents to 5 cents, enter 5 under the 4.
- 3 Select the checkbox *Rounding on total*, if necessary.
- 4 Select the tender for rounding from the dropdown list.
- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Member Card & Promotions

Use the Member Card and Promotions option to set up and define various requirements for member cards and member promotions.

The options available for in Member Card and Promotions are:

- Member Card
- Member Promotion
- Voucher Ranges

➤ **To set up a Member Card**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Member Card & Promotions and then Member Card. The Member Card tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Member Card Tab

Member Card Parameters

Member Card | Member card Redemption

☒ Member card in system

☐ Member card number includes check digit

☐ Key-in Member Card number without check digit

☐ Allow scanning of Member Card during a transaction

Member Card name in system:

☐ Display member name from COREMA

Length of secondary ID number (CCMS only):

☐ Automatically accept combine card as tender

☐ Prompt for Member Card when 'Total' key was pressed

Check digit calculation used for member card:

☐ Member card used at POS must have a valid EAN check digit

☐ Send non loyalty records to corema

Member Name

☐ Show on customer display

☐ Show on cashier display

☐ Print on receipt

Member Card Description

☐ Show on customer display

☐ Show on cashier display

Member Card Prompts

Member Card Prompt:

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Member card in system	Select this parameter to enable member cards in the system.
Member card number includes check digit	Select this parameter if the member card number includes a check digit.
Key-in Member Card number without check digit	Select this parameter to allow cashiers to manually key-in member card numbers without the check digit.

Parameter	Description
Allow scanning of Member Card during a transaction	Select this parameter to allow cashier to scan a Member Card during a sales transaction without having to first press the preset Member Card key. To enable this feature, you must define the Member Card in Card Range Maintenance, as one of the first five ranges.
Member Card name in system	If desired, enter the name of the Member Card (e.g., Platinum) as it appears in the system. The card name may include up to 12 alphanumeric characters. The card name can be display on the cashier and/or customer display (see Member Card Description fields below).
Display member name from COREMA	Select this parameter to display member name stored in Corema. After the customer's PAN (Personal Account Number) is sent to Corema and data is received for the specified customer, the customer's name will be displayed.
Length of secondary ID number (CCMS only)	Enter the maximum number of characters allowed for a secondary Member ID number an additional unique ID number required, for example, when a customer misplaces their Member Card.
Automatically accept combine card as tender	Select this option to automatically accept combined card as tender. This means that you can use your member card as a tender defined in Database Management, Card Maintenance.

Parameter	Description
Prompt for Member Card when 'Total' key was pressed	Select this parameter to prompt a Cashier to request a Member Card when the <i>Total</i> key is pressed.
Check digit calculation used for member card	Choose the check digit calculation method by which the Member Card Check Digit will be determined. Options are Account or UPC.
Member card used at POS must have a valid EAN check digit	Select this parameter to validate the EAN (European Article Number) Check Digit on Member Cards.
Send non-loyalty records to Corema	Select this parameter to send non-member promotional record records to Corema. (Currently not supported in Corema.)
Member Name area:	
Show on customer display	Select this parameter to display the name of the Member Card holder on the Customer Display once the card is swiped or scanned.
Show on cashier display	Select this parameter to display the name of the Member Card holder on the Cashier Display once the card is swiped or scanned.
Print on receipt	Select this parameter to print the name of the Member Card holder on the customer receipt.
Member Card Description area:	
Show on customer display	Select this parameter to display the Member Card Name (description) on the Customer Display once the card is swiped or scanned.
Show on cashier display	Select this parameter to display the Member Card Name (description) on the Cashier Display once the card is swiped or scanned.

Parameter	Description
Member Card Prompts area:	
Member Card Prompt	This parameter provides the option to define the text that appears on the Cashier's Display, prompting the Cashier to request a Loyalty card. The prompt may include up to 20 alphanumeric characters.

Member Card Redemption Tab

The screenshot shows a window titled "Member Card Parameters" with two tabs: "Member Card" and "Member card Redemption". The "Member card Redemption" tab is active. It contains a "Redemption" section with the following fields:

- Redemption end date: 09/05/2002
- Pending redemption start date: 10/05/2002
- Redemption tender: CASH
- Redemption option: Use all redemption amount
- Qualified spend option: Print only TOTAL POINTS(TFS)

Below these fields is a text entry: "1 Points = 1.00 (value)". At the bottom of the window are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description

Parameter	Description
Redemption end date	Enter the redemption end date. This is the last date on which you can redeem the reward.
Note: The Redemption parameters list on this tab are reserved for future development.	
Pending redemption start date	Enter the pending redemption start date. This is the next (pending) redemption start date. (Reserved for future development.)
Redemption tender	This is the tender you could choose to pay customers when redeeming customer points. (Reserved for future development.)
Redemption option	When redeeming customer points, you can either redeem ALL points, or a partial amount. Select the appropriate option. (Reserved for future development.)
Qualified spend option	From the dropdown list, select one of the following Qualified Spend Options to print on the customer receipt: • None • Print QF for Member Card Customers Only • Print QF on all Receipts • As Option 1 + Member Card Points Message • As Option 2 + Member Card Points Message • Print only Total Points (TFS) (Reserved for future development.)

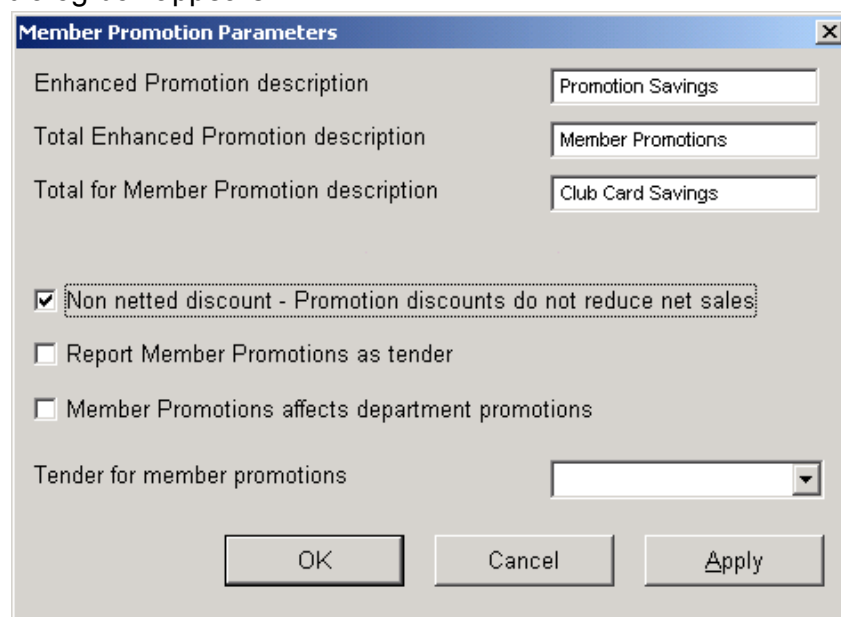
Parameter	Description
"XX" Points = "Y.YY" Value	Specify the points' redemption value. Points (XX) must be less than or equal to 3200 and Value (Y.YY) must be less than or equal to 999999. (Reserved for future development.)

Member Promotion

Member Promotion Parameters enable you to define various requirements and descriptions for Member Promotions.

➤ **To define Member Promotion parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Member Card & Promotions, and then Member Promotions. The Member Promotion Parameters dialog box appears.



The screenshot shows the "Member Promotion Parameters" dialog box. It has a title bar with a close button (X). The dialog contains several input fields and checkboxes. The first three are text boxes for descriptions: "Enhanced Promotion description" (containing "Promotion Savings"), "Total Enhanced Promotion description" (containing "Member Promotions"), and "Total for Member Promotion description" (containing "Club Card Savings"). Below these are three checkboxes: the first is checked and labeled "Non netted discount - Promotion discounts do not reduce net sales"; the second is unchecked and labeled "Report Member Promotions as tender"; the third is unchecked and labeled "Member Promotions affects department promotions". At the bottom left is a label "Tender for member promotions" next to a dropdown menu. At the bottom right are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Enhanced Promotion description	Promotion Savings
Total Enhanced Promotion description	Member Promotions
Total for Member Promotion description	Club Card Savings

☒ Non netted discount - Promotion discounts do not reduce net sales

☐ Report Member Promotions as tender

☐ Member Promotions affects department promotions

Tender for member promotions [Dropdown]

OK Cancel Apply

- 2 Select the options, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Enhanced Promotion description	Enter the enhanced promotion description. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt.
Total Enhanced Promotion description	Enter the total enhanced promotion description. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt at the end of a transaction.
Total for Member Promotion description	Enter the total member promotion description. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt at the end of a transaction.
Non netted discount – Promotion discounts do not reduce net sales	Select this option so that member promotion discounts do not decrease net sales figures.
Report Member Promotions as tender	Select this option to report member promotions as tender.
Member Promotions affects department promotions	Select this option so that member promotions will be given at department level versus at PLU level.
Tender for member promotions	From the dropdown list, select the tender to use for member promotions.

- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

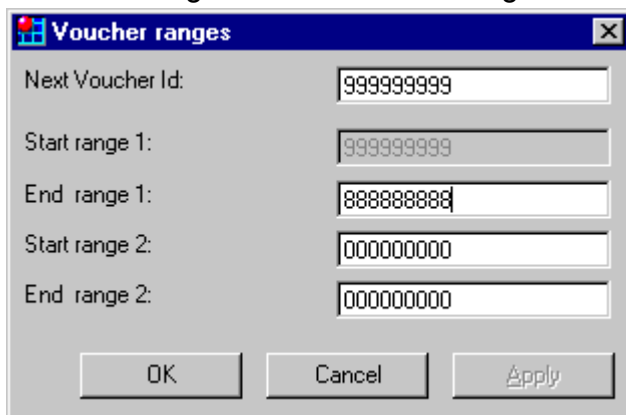
Voucher Ranges

Voucher Ranges are used for gas reward schemes only. This option maintains a record of gas reward vouchers, which have been redeemed.

Note: Making changes is unnecessary, as the system automatically updates the Next Voucher ID range.

➤ **To set Voucher Ranges**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Member Card & Promotions and then Voucher Ranges. The Voucher Ranges dialog box appears.



The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Voucher ranges". It contains five text input fields arranged vertically. The first field, labeled "Next Voucher Id:", contains the number "999999999". The second field, labeled "Start range 1:", also contains "999999999". The third field, labeled "End range 1:", contains "888888888". The fourth field, labeled "Start range 2:", contains "000000000". The fifth field, labeled "End range 2:", contains "000000000". At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

- 2 Enter the Next Voucher Id. This number can be up to 9 digits. If this is the first time a number is entered here, the system automatically transfers the number to the *Start range 1* field.
- 3 Enter the various field numbers accordingly.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Additional Tender Information

This feature is currently not supported.

Barcoded Tender

➤ **To set up Barcoded Tender**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Additional Tender Information. The Additional Tender Information tabbed dialog box appears.

Additional Tender Information

Tender Information | Barcoded tender

Additional Tender Information

Table entry 1		Table entry 11	
Table entry 2		Table entry 12	
Table entry 3		Table entry 13	
Table entry 4		Table entry 14	
Table entry 5		Table entry 15	
Table entry 6		Table entry 16	
Table entry 7		Table entry 17	
Table entry 8		Table entry 18	
Table entry 9		Table entry 19	
Table entry 10		Table entry 20	

OK Cancel Apply

Note:

The Additional Tender feature is not currently supported.

- 2 Select the Barcoded Tender tab. The Barcoded Tender tab appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled 'Additional Tender Information' with two tabs: 'Tender Information' and 'Barcoded tender'. The 'Barcoded tender' tab is selected. Inside the tab, there is a checkbox labeled 'Barcoded tender active' which is checked. Below this are four text input fields with labels and values: 'Barcoded tender number' with value '17', 'Barcoded tender prefix' with value '29', 'Barcoded tender value location' with value '8', and 'Barcoded tender value length' with value '5'. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

- 3 Set the properties and options, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Barcoded tender active	Select to activate barcoded tender.
Barcoded tender number	Enter the Barcoded tender number, created in Tender Maintenance (refer to <i>StoreLine/ISS45 Office User's Guide</i>).
Barcoded tender prefix	Specify the 2-digit tender prefix code (first 2 digits in barcode). For example, '29' for Coinstar barcoded tender.

Parameter	Description
Barcoded tender value location	Specify the location in the barcode for the first digit of the price field. For example, the Coinstar barcode looks like: 29-YYYYY-ZZZZZ-C. The 8 th digit is the first digit in the price field.
Barcoded tender value length	Enter the number of digits that represent the length of the tender value. For example, the tender value field length is 5 digits, for Coinstar ('ZZZZZ' = \$ZZZ.ZZ).

- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Trading Stamps

Trading Stamps may be awarded to customers according to the rules you specify. Use this feature's, options, and parameters to suit your specific requirements.

➤ **To define Trading Stamp parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Trading Stamps and then Trading Stamps Parameters. The Trading Stamp Parameters dialog box appears.

Trading Stamp Parameters

Trading Stamp Parameters

☐ Trading Stamps in system

Purchase amount required for one stamp: 0.00

Multiplication calculation Method: None

☐ Before vendor coupons

☐ Before bonus coupons

☐ Before store coupons

Template name (text) to print on receipt:

☐ Don't display message on operator screen

☐ Display/Print points with decimal point

None
Dept. Eligible total
By Stamps earned

OK Cancel Apply

2 Select the options, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Trading Stamps in system	Select this checkbox to enable Trading Stamps in the system.
Purchase amount required for one stamp	Specify the purchase amount necessary to award one stamp. This means that if the specified amount is reached, a stamp may be awarded to the customer (amount must be equal to less than 999.99). For example: If you specify \$ 5.00 and a customer's total purchase is @ 10.00, then the system awards 2 stamps.
Multiplication calculation Method	To award multiple of stamps, select the appropriate method. • None • Dept. Eligible Total • By Stamps Earned The POS terminal multiplies stamps already awarded, by the multiplication factor, according to the method you select here. Note: In Department Maintenance, you must check the <i>Trading Stamps Eligible</i> parameter, for each department (as required), to participate in awarding of stamps.
Before vendor coupon	Select this option if you want the POS terminal to award stamps according to the order total, before or after vendor coupons.

Parameter	Description
Before bonus coupons	Select this option if you want the POS terminal to award stamps according to the order total, before or after bonus coupons.
Before store coupons	Select this option if you want the POS terminal to award stamps according to the order total, before or after store coupons.
Template name (text) to print on receipt	Select the template (previously defined) to print the required 'stamps earned' message on the customer receipt.
Don't display message on operator screen	Select this checkbox to avoid displaying the Trading Stamp Message on the cashier screen.
Display/Print points with decimal point	Select this checkbox to display and print trading stamp points with decimal point.

- 3** Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Multiple Stamp Schemes

Use the options in Multiple Stamp Schemes to award customers with extra stamps. You can set up schemes with different rules for various days and times.

➤ **To set up Multiple Stamp Schemes**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Trading Stamps and then Multiple Stamp Schemes. The Multiple Stamp Schemes list appears.
- 2 Highlight a scheme number and click *Edit*. The Multiple Stamp Schemes dialog box appears.

Multiple Stamp Schemes

Scheme Number: 1 ☒ Active

General

☒ Sun ☐ Mon ☐ Tue ☐ Wed ☐ Thu ☒ Fri ☒ Sat

Start Time 08:00

End Time 22:00

Minimum purchase 100.00

Multiplication factor 5.00

Navigation buttons: [Back] [Forward] [Cancel] [Apply]

- 3 Accept the scheme number or enter another one.

- 4 Set the various properties and options as defined below.

Parameter	Description
Active	Check to activate the scheme.
Sun - Sat	Check the required day(s).
Start time	Time to activate the scheme for the above day(s).
End time	Time to terminate the scheme for the above day(s).
Minimum purchase	The minimum purchase amount required enabling multiplication. If a customer buys for less than the specified amount, the number of stamps awarded is not multiplied.
Multiplication factor	The qualifying amount purchased (or number of stamps) is multiplied by the factor you enter here.

- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Coupon Parameters

Coupon parameters enables you to link coupons to the appropriate tender types, and to define how coupon transactions are printed on the receipt.

The following options are available from the Coupon Parameters menu:

- General Coupon Parameters
- Bonus Coupon Options
- Coupon Value Code Table
- Coupon Printing Parameters
- Coupon Printing Maintenance

➤ **To access the General Coupon Parameters option**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Coupon Parameters and then General Coupon Parameters. The General Coupons Parameters tabbed dialog box appears. The dialog box contains three tabs, each of which is described in the following sections.

General Tab

The screenshot shows the 'General Coupon Parameters' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The dialog contains several checkboxes and dropdown menus for configuring coupon behavior.

- ☐ Give bonus coupon on discountable items only
- ☒ Allow coupon in departments with no sales in order
- ☐ No keyboard sound for coupons without department or price
- ☐ EAN 99 coupons in system
- ☐ 99 vendor coupon in system
- ☐ No CDV check on item scan/ENTER key
- ☐ No UPC5 in System
- Smart Card Coupon in System: None
- Enable Double Coupon to: All
- Enable Triple coupon to: All
- Maximum of Triple Coupons per ticket:
- CC to allow coupons to bring Subtotal < Zero:
- CC to allow more coupons than items:
- CC to restrict redemption of EAN 99 coupons out of sale:
- CC to allow coupons as first item in order:
- Maximum coupon face value: 0.00
- Force zeros on coupon number: ☐

Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Apply.

Parameter	Description
Give bonus coupon on discountable items only	A bonus coupon may only be issued for items that have been defined as discountable in the PLU Maintenance parameters.
Allow coupon in departments with no sales in order	Select this parameter to allow coupons to be processed with no department sales. The first Department Coupon processed in the ticket determines which department will receive the Coupon discount(s).
No keyboard sound for coupons without department or price	The keyboard sound will not be triggered if coupons without a defined department or price are issued at a POS terminal.

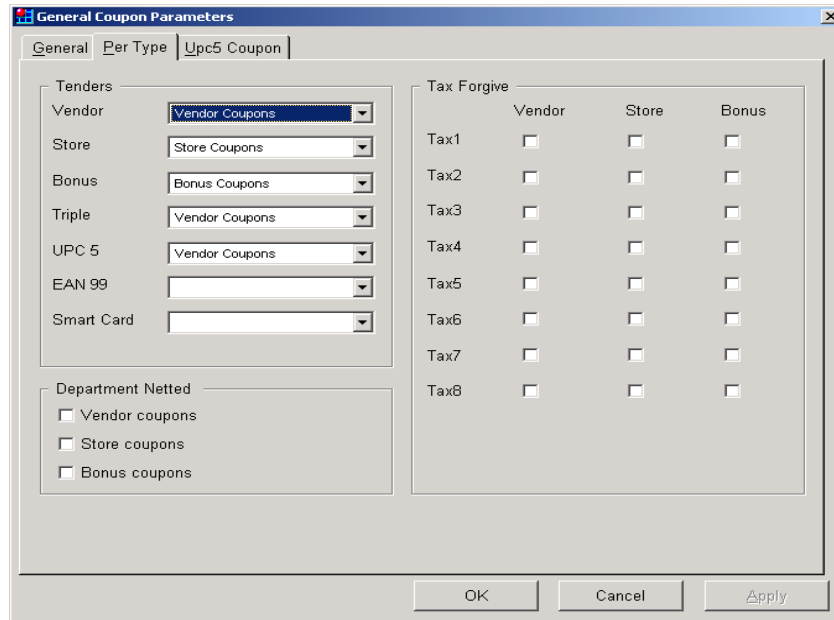
Parameter	Description
EAN99 coupons in system	Select this parameter to enable EAN99 coupons in the system. If this checkbox is checked, the following checkbox will be disabled.
UPC99 vendor coupon in system	Select this parameter to enable UPC99 Vendor Coupons in the system. UPC99 coupons are the same as UPC5 coupons, but without the Bonus Coupon capability. If this checkbox is selected, the previous checkbox will be disabled.
NO CDV check on item Scan/ENTER key	Select this parameter if you do not want the system to do a check digit validation (CDV) check on scanned or manually key-entered items.
No UPC5 in System	Select this checkbox if no UPC5 coupon scanning is used in the system. Selecting No will define a UPC5 coupon as a regular item.
Smart Card Coupon in System	Select this parameter to enable Smart Card Coupons in the system.
Note: This parameter is currently not supported.	
Enable Double Coupon to:	Specify who is eligible for Double Bonus Coupons. Options include: • All • Members • Non-members • Disable All

Parameter	Description
Enable Triple coupon to:	Specify who is eligible for Triple Bonus Coupons. Options include: • All • Members • Non-members • Disable All
Maximum of Triple Coupons per ticket	If desired, specify the maximum number of Triple Coupons allowed per ticket.
CC to allow coupons to bring Sub-total < Zero	From the dropdown list, select the Control Check to display when the value of the coupons allow the order sub-total to become negative (less than zero).
CC to allow more coupons than items	From the dropdown list, select the Control Check to display when the number of vendor coupons exceeds the number of items purchased in the order.
CC to restrict redemption of EAN 99 coupons out of sale	From the dropdown list, select the Control Check to display when an EAN99 coupon is redeemed outside of an order (i.e., give a customer cash in return for a coupon).
CC to allow coupons as first item in order	From the dropdown list, select the Control Check to display when the sales transaction is a 'Coupon Only' order, i.e., a sales transaction in which the first item is a coupon.
Maximum coupon face value	Enter the maximum value allowed for a coupon. The system default is \$ 25.00
Force zeros on coupon number	If you want to force zeros on the coupon number, then enter the number of zeros.

Note: This parameter is currently not supported.

Per Type Tab

The *Per Type* tab enables you to define the tender types that are to be associated with each type of coupon, and to specify which taxes, if any, are to be forgiven when coupons are tendered.



The dialog box is titled "General Coupon Parameters" and has three tabs: "General", "Per Type", and "Upc5 Coupon". The "Per Type" tab is selected. It contains two main sections: "Tenders" and "Tax Forgive".

Tenders Section: This section contains seven dropdown menus for selecting tender types:

- Vendor: Vendor Coupons
- Store: Store Coupons
- Bonus: Bonus Coupons
- Triple: Vendor Coupons
- UPC 5: Vendor Coupons
- EAN 99: (empty)
- Smart Card: (empty)

Department Netted Section: This section contains three checkboxes:

- ☐ Vendor coupons
- ☐ Store coupons
- ☐ Bonus coupons

Tax Forgive Section: This section contains a table with eight rows (Tax1 to Tax8) and three columns (Vendor, Store, Bonus). Each cell contains a checkbox.

	Vendor	Store	Bonus
Tax1	☐	☐	☐
Tax2	☐	☐	☐
Tax3	☐	☐	☐
Tax4	☐	☐	☐
Tax5	☐	☐	☐
Tax6	☐	☐	☐
Tax7	☐	☐	☐
Tax8	☐	☐	☐

At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

➤ To define the Per Type parameters

- 1 Select a tender type for each coupon type that is used in the store from the dropdown lists in the *Tenders* area of the dialog box.
- 2 In the *Department Netted* area of the dialog box, select the checkboxes next to the coupon types for which department sales totals will not be reduced, when the coupon is tendered as part of the sale.

- 3 In the *Tax Forgive* area, on the right side of the dialog box, select the checkboxes for the coupon types and tax types for which tax is to be forgiven.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

UPC5 Coupon Tab

The UPC5 Coupon tab enables you to define the level of coupon validation of item eligibility. It also enables you to link UPC5 coupons, which do not have a defined family code, to a specific department. A UPC5 coupon number is identified by the number system 5 at the beginning of the barcode.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "General Coupon Parameters" with three tabs: "General", "Per Type", and "Upc5 Coupon". The "Upc5 Coupon" tab is selected. It contains three dropdown menus:

- Level of coupon validation: Manufacturer
- Level of SmartCard Coupon Validation: None
- Markdown department for UPC5 coupon with 992 bypass code: None

At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

➤ **To define UPC5 coupon parameters**

- 1 In the *UPC5 Coupon* tab, select a parameter from the *Level of coupon validation* dropdown list.

Parameter	Description
None	The coupon may be used for any PLU item.
Manufacturer	The coupon may be used for any PLU item supplied by the specified manufacturer.
Family (1 digit only)	The coupon may be used for any item, within the specified department, supplied by the specified manufacturer.
Family (all 3 digits)	The coupon must be used for a specific item supplied by the specified manufacturer.

- 2 Select a department from the dropdown list in the *Markdown department for UPC5 coupon with 992 bypass code* field to which coupons that are not linked to a specific manufacturer, department and/or item are to be linked.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Bonus Coupon Options

This option enables you to define bonus coupons. Bonus coupons are calculated against vendor coupons and charged to a store. Vendor coupons give double, triple or any specified multiple of bonus coupons if a specified dollar limit has been reached, and the day of the week is a bonus day. You can define up to four coupon ranges. For each range, enter the following information.

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Coupon Parameters and then Bonus Coupon Options. The Bonus Coupon Options dialog box appears.

Bonus Coupon Options						
Coupon Multiplier	Add Amount	Coupon Value From	Coupon Value To	Minimum Purchase	Tender No.	Ceiling Amount
Range 1						
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0	0.00
☐ Sun	☐ Mon	☐ Tue	☐ Wed	☐ Thu	☐ Fri	☐ Sat
Range 2						
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0	0.00
☐ Sun	☐ Mon	☐ Tue	☐ Wed	☐ Thu	☐ Fri	☐ Sat
Range 3						
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0	0.00
☐ Sun	☐ Mon	☐ Tue	☐ Wed	☐ Thu	☐ Fri	☐ Sat
Range 4						
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0	0.00
☐ Sun	☐ Mon	☐ Tue	☐ Wed	☐ Thu	☐ Fri	☐ Sat

OK Cancel Apply

- 2 Select the parameters as described below.

Parameter	Description
Range 1 through Range 4 areas:	
Coupon Multiplier	Enter the number by which the vendor coupon is multiplied. For example, if vendor coupons should be doubled, enter 2.
Add Amount	Enter the Bonus Coupon value that will be added to the Manufacturer Coupon for this Bonus Coupon Range. This is an optional amount, above and beyond the 'ceiling amount'.
Coupon Value From:	Specify the minimum manufacturer's coupon value that applies to this Bonus Coupon Range.
Coupon Value To:	Specify the maximum manufacturer's coupon value that applies to this Bonus Coupon Range.
Minimum Purchase	Specify the minimum order total required before a bonus coupon value will be applied.
Tender No.	Specify the tender type for tracking the bonus amount on receipt and in reports.
Ceiling Amount	Specify the maximum value allowed when combining the value of the Manufacturer's coupon with the value of the Bonus Coupon. (Vendor + Bonus amount)
Sunday – Saturday	Select the days of the week on which the Bonus Coupons will be applied. For example, if the Bonus Coupon Range is to be issued only Fridays and Saturdays, check the Fri. and Sat. boxes.

3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Coupon Value Code Table

This option contains parameters for defining UPC5-type vendor coupons.

Code	Type	Description	'BUY' Qty	'GET' Value
0	1	Key in value	0	0.00
1	1	Key in value	1	0.00
2	4	Buy X or more, Get 1 free	4	0.00
3	5	Get Y amount off	0	1.10
4	5	Get Y amount off	0	1.35
5	5	Get Y amount off	1	1.40
6	5	Get Y amount off	0	1.60
7	7	Buy X or more, Get Y amount off	3	1.50
8	7	Buy X or more, Get Y amount off	2	3.00
9	7	Buy X or more, Get Y amount off	3	2.00
10	5	Get Y amount off	0	0.10
11	5	Get Y amount off	0	1.85

Types	
0	Not in use
1	Key in value
2	Get 1 free
3	Buy X, Get 1 free
4	Buy X or more, Get 1 free
5	Get Y amount off
6	Buy X, get Y amount off
7	Buy X or more, Get Y amount off

The column on the left side provides a list of coupon type codes. These 2-digit code numbers are used to identify the type of discount or offer on each coupon.

➤ To define a coupon type

- 1 Highlight the relevant code.
- 2 Enter a type code from the list on the right, and press **OK**.
The following types are available:
 - 00 - Not in use
 - 01 - Key in value (coupon without value, key in amount manually)
 - 02 - Get 1 free
 - 03 - Buy X get 1 free
 - 04 - Buy X or more, get 1 free
 - 05 - Get Y amount off
 - 06 - Buy X, get Y amount off

■ 07 - Buy X or more, get Y amount off

X denotes the quantity to be purchased in order to get a coupon. If you selected any one of the options containing X, you need to enter the quantity in the "BUY" Qty field.

Y denotes amount to be reduced. If you selected any one of the options containing Y, you need to enter the amount in the "GET" Value field.

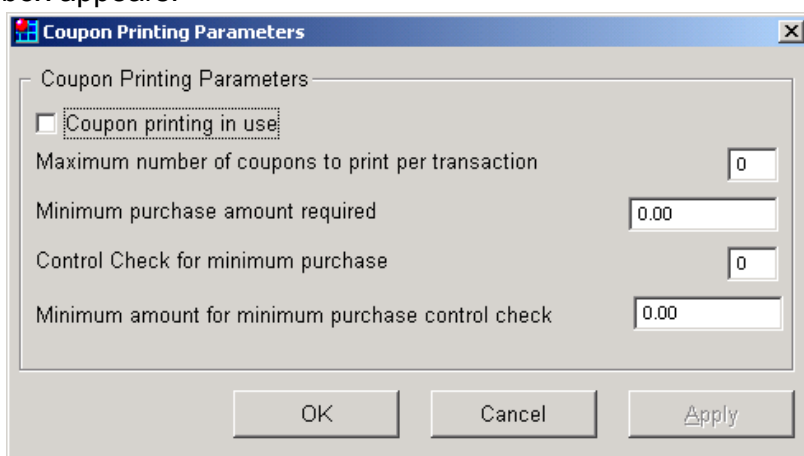
- 3 In the "BUY" Qty field, enter the quantity to purchase in order to get a coupon.
- 4 In the "GET" Value field, enter the amount to be reduced from sale. (Do not enter an amount if the coupon type is defined as 'get one free'.)
- 5 Click OK or Apply to save.

Coupon Printing Parameters

The Coupon Printing Parameters option enables you to define and design store coupons to be printed for each customer transaction based on the items in that order.

➤ **To define Coupon Printing Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Coupon Parameters and then Coupon Printing Parameters. The Coupon Printing Parameters dialog box appears.



The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Coupon Printing Parameters". It contains the following elements:

- A checkbox labeled "Coupon printing in use" which is currently unchecked.
- A text label "Maximum number of coupons to print per transaction" followed by a numeric input field containing the value "0".
- A text label "Minimum purchase amount required" followed by a numeric input field containing the value "0.00".
- A text label "Control Check for minimum purchase" followed by a numeric input field containing the value "0".
- A text label "Minimum amount for minimum purchase control check" followed by a numeric input field containing the value "0.00".
- At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

- 2 Set the appropriate details, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Coupon printing in use	Select this parameter to enable the Coupon Printing feature
Maximum number of coupons to print per transaction	Enter the maximum number of coupons to print per sales transaction.
Minimum purchase amount required	Specify the minimum purchase amount required to initiate coupon printing.
Control Check for minimum purchase	Enter the number of the Control Check to display when the transaction total is less than the predefined minimum purchase amount for generating a printed coupon.
Minimum amount for minimum purchase control check	Refer to <i>Chapter 1, System Parameter Tree</i> , for field definition.

- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Coupon Printing Maintenance

The Coupon Printing option enables you to define and design store coupons to be printed for each customer transaction based on the items in that basket. A customer has the right to a coupon based on the following conditions:

- Purchasing a specific item.
- Purchasing an item from a specific department.
- Not purchasing a specific item.
- Not purchasing an item from a specific department.

A coupon prints on a 5-line format at the end of a customer transaction.

➤ To access the Coupon Printing parameters

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Coupon Parameters and then Coupon Printing Maintenance. The Coupon Printing Maintenance tabbed dialog box appears. The dialog box contains two tabs, each of which is described in the following sections.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

General Tab

This tab enables you to define the conditions printing coupons.

The screenshot shows the 'Coupon Printing Maintenance' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The 'Coupon Number' field contains the value '1'. The 'Coupon in use' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Select Item/Department number' dropdown is set to 'Department'. The 'Department Number' field contains '0'. The 'Select Item/Department found/not found in basket' dropdown is set to 'Not Found'. The 'Print barcode' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Barcode number' field contains '0'. The 'Ticket amount to print coupon' field contains '0.00'. The 'Minimum purchase amount required' field contains '0.00'. The 'CC for minimum purchase' field contains '0'. The 'Graphic logo' dropdown is empty. At the bottom, there are navigation buttons (back, forward, etc.) and action buttons: 'Check Digit', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Parameter	Description
Coupon Number	Enter the coupon number.
Coupon in use	Check or uncheck to enable or disable the coupon. The coupon will be printed on each POS terminal as per system setup.

Parameter	Description
Select Item/Department number	Item – the basket will be searched for a specific item. Department - the basket will be searched for a specific department.
Department Number or PLU Number	If the coupon is item specific, enter the PLU number of the item. If the coupon is department specific, enter the department number. Type in the number or press the browser button, to the right, to display a list of items or departments and select the required value.
Select item/Department found/not found in basket	Found – if the item or department is found in the basket, that particular coupon prints on the register. Not Found - if the item or department is not found in the basket, the coupon prints on the register.
Print barcode	Check this parameter to enable barcode printing on the coupon.

Note: Barcodes can be printed only if you use thermal receipt printers.

Parameter	Description
Barcode number	If the Print Barcode parameter is checked, type in the required barcode number, up to 13 digits. If the system is operating without check digit validation, the POS terminal adds a valid CD to the barcode number when it prints. If the system is operating with check digit validation, the POS terminal checks if the barcode has a valid CD and prints only if a valid CD exists. Select <i>check digit</i>. The system calculates and inserts the check digit.
Ticket amount to print coupon	Use this parameter to make the system look at the amount you enter here as the qualifier. The system will not check if items are found or not found in the transaction.
Minimum purchase amount required	Customer must spend the minimum amount you enter here, to qualify for the coupon.
CC for minimum purchase	Enter the number of the Control Check to display when the amount purchased is less than the pre-defined purchase amount required for this coupon. (See parameter, <i>Minimum purchase amount required</i>, above.)
Graphic Logo	From the dropdown list, select the Graphic Logo to print on the coupon. Reference the POS Logo Maintenance section for information on creating Graphic Logos.

Coupon Lines Tab

The Coupon Lines option enables you to enter 5 lines of alphanumeric text, which prints on the customer receipt.

The screenshot shows the 'Coupon Printing Maintenance' dialog box with the 'Coupon Lines' tab selected. At the top, there is a 'Coupon Number' field and a 'Coupon in use' checkbox. Below these are two tabs: 'General' and 'Coupon Lines'. The 'Coupon Lines' tab contains a table with 5 rows for entering text. To the right of the table is a 'Line Alignment' section with 'Left' and 'Center' buttons. At the bottom of the dialog are navigation buttons (back, forward, etc.) and 'Check Digit', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

Text	Bold
	☐
	☐
	☐
	☐
	☐

➤ **To define coupon lines**

- 1 Enter the coupon text accordingly.
- 2 Set the line alignment to either left or center. You may also set the font to print bold text.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Restricted Sales Options

The Restricted Sale feature enables you to define restrictions on sales of items or on sales encompassing entire departments. The restrictions may apply to customer age, day of week or time of day.

Restricted Sales Birthday Validation

The Restricted Sales Birthday Validation option allows you to implement department-based validation on restricted items such as liquor and cigarettes. This feature can be set up in one of three ways:

- The sale of an item can be restricted at a certain time of the day (restricted sale).
- The sale of an item can be restricted to individuals who have reached a certain age (birthday validation).
- The sale of an item can be restricted both by the time of day and the age of the customer (restricted sale and birthday validation).

You can set restrictions for up to ten departments. All items in the restricted departments are subject to validation. Validation occurs both upon department and item code entry, at the POS terminal.

➤ **To set up the Restrict Sale Birthday Validation option**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Restricted Sales Options and then Restricted Sales Birthday Validation. The Restricted Sale/Birthday Valid dialog box appears.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Department Number										
Set No (1 - 3)										
CC Restricted sale										
Age Birthday Val.										
CC Birthday val.										

- 2 Select the various properties and options, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Restricted Sale/Birthday feature in use	Select this parameter, if Restricted Sale/Birthday feature is being used. A restricted sale means the item can only be purchased at a particular time of day (e.g., beer, wine). A birthday validation means the item can only be purchased by an individual of a particular age.
Prompt to accept Birthday	Select this parameter if you want the POS terminal to ask the cashier for birthday verification.
CC for bypassing Birthday prompt	The Control Check to be displayed if the cashier does not enter a birth date for birthday validation.
Birthday validation print option	This field determines whether the birth date is printed on the receipt, audit tape or both. Select the required option.

In the lower part of the screen, you can set restrictions for up to 10 departments. Each of the columns refers to a department. Enter the following information for each department.

Parameter	Description
Department Number	Enter the department number to which the restrictions apply. Whenever this restricted department is rung up on the POS terminal, the validation process is executed.
Set No. (1 to 3)	Enter the layout number (1, 2, or 3). This number refers to the layouts defined via the Restricted Sales Times option (see relevant section, later in this chapter). This number determines the selling times allowed for this restricted department. If this field is zero, then the restricted sale time option is not used for this particular department.
CC Restricted Sale	If you entered a layout number in the previous field, you can set up a Control Check on this department. This Control Check triggers if an item is being purchased at an invalid time of day. If you enter 0 for the Control Check, no check is executed and all customers are allowed to buy the items regardless of the time of day.
Age Birthday Validation	Enter the minimum age required (1-99) for a customer to purchase restricted items in this department. Enter 0 to disable the birthday validation option for this department.
CC Birthday Validation	If you entered an age in the previous field, you can set up a Control Check on this department. This Control Check triggers if the customer has not yet reached the age to purchase items in this department. If you enter 0 for a Control Check, no check is executed and all customers are allowed to buy items, regardless of age.

- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Restricted Sales Times

This option allows you to define up to three sets of selling times for restricted departments. The relevant time layout number (1, 2 or 3) for a department is entered via the Restricted Sale Birthday Validation and Restricted Sale Layout screens.

- **To set Restricted Sale Times**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Restricted Sales Options and then Restricted Sales Times. The Restricted Sales Times tabbed dialog box appears.

Restricted Sale Times

Time Set 1 | Time Set 2 | Time Set 3

(HHMM)

	Start -	Stop - 1	Start -	Stop - 2
Monday - Thursday	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Friday	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Saturday	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00
Sunday	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00

Set Valid Days

☐ Mon ☐ Tue ☐ Wed ☐ Thu ☐ Fri ☐ Sat ☐ Sun

OK Cancel Apply

Time Set 1 through Time Set 3 tabs look identical.

- 2 Set up to two sets of 'start' and 'stop' selling times for different days of the week. The times entered should reflect the actual timeframes that the purchases are allowed. The times must be entered in a 24-hour format (i.e., noon = 12:00 and midnight = 24:00).
- 3 In each Time Set, specify selling times, separately for weekdays (Monday through Thursday), Fridays, Saturdays, and Sundays.
- 4 Select the valid days of the week for each Time Set.
- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Restricted Sales Special Dates

This option allows you to restrict sales on specific dates and times you specify.

➤ **To set up the Restricted Sale Special Dates options**

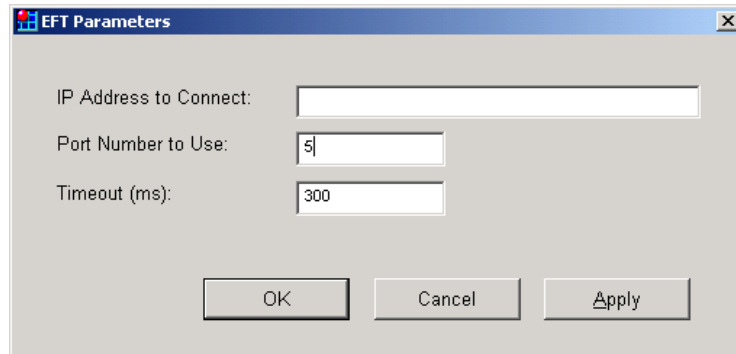
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Restricted Sales Options and then the Restricted Sales Special Dates option. The Restricted Sale Special Dates dialog box appears.

No.	Date	Start-1	Stop-1	Start-2	Stop-2	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
2	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
3	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
4	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
5	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
6	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
7	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
8	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										
9	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00										

- 2 Specify the specific date and time you want to restrict sales.
- 3 You can link each restricted sale to a previously defined layout. These layouts contain specific rules, for example, which departments or items are restricted.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

EFT Parameters

When EFT is used in a store, a separate server is usually installed for communication between the store and the bank or financial institution.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "EFT Parameters" with a standard Windows window border. Inside the dialog, there are three labeled text input fields: "IP Address to Connect:" (empty), "Port Number to Use:" (containing the number "5"), and "Timeout (ms):" (containing the number "300"). At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

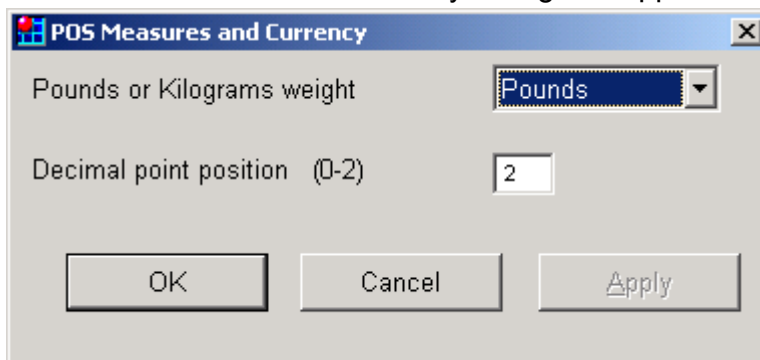
EFT installation and the setting of the relevant parameters are highly technical. Contact your supplier for further information.

POS Measures and Currency

The unit of measurement that is to be used for POS weighing equipment and the decimal point position of the weight can be easily defined.

➤ **To define Point of Sale units and measures**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then POS Measures and Currency. The POS Measures and Currency dialog box appears.



- 2 Enter either *Pounds* or *Kilograms* from the dropdown list.
- 3 Enter a number between 0 and 2 in the *Decimal point position* (0-2) field, which defines the position of the decimal point when weight is calculated. The number indicates the number of digits to the right of the decimal point.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Control Check Options

Control Checks alert authorized store personnel to various conditions or events that may occur at the POS terminal. When control checks are triggered, they display a message at the POS terminal and require a form of response. Various response types can be set up which may allow cashiers to continue, or force them to call a supervisor. (Refer to *Office User Guide, Control Check Maintenance*, for defining Control Checks.)

The Control Check Options dialog box allows you to select the POS conditions or events, which need to be monitored and controlled. The dialog box contains four tabs, each of which is described in the following section.

➤ **To access Control Check Options**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, and then Control Checks Options. The Control Check Options tabbed dialog box appears
- 2 On each tab, set the options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Control Check Options – Parameter 1

Control Check Options

Parameters 1 | Parameters 2 | Parameters 3 | Parameters 4

☐ Bypass Control Check if conditions met

CC for printer paper low : Receipt : RECEIPT ROLL LOW
Audit : AUDIT ROLL LOW

CC for keying weighed items (no scale) None

CC for exceeding Cancel/Subtract limit ABOVE LIMIT

Cancel/Subtract limit amount 0.00

CC for transaction void MGR KEY REQUIRED

CC for subtract next during item registration None

CC for item cancel during item registration None

CC for subtract Next/Item cancel after completion None

CC for pressing item cancel during Template/Slip print None

CC for return transactions, after completion None

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Bypass Control Check if conditions met	This parameter provides the option for a cashier to bypass a Control Check, thus it will not be displayed if all the necessary conditions are met. These conditions include cashier's privilege and key-lock position. If blank, the Control Check is executed regardless of the key position.

Parameter	Description
CC for printer low: Receipt: Audit:	Receipt: The Control Check to display when the printer receipt paper is low. Audit: The Control Check to display when the printer audit paper is low (relevant only in POSTs with Audit-Printing capabilities).
CC for keying weighed items (no scale)	The Control Check to display when trying to key-in weighed items, when the scale is out of order (i.e., manual weight).
CC for exceeding Cancel/Subtract limit	The Control Check to display when exceeding the maximum voided sum allowed for one ticket. The Control Check will be displayed when pressing the <i>Total</i> key.
Cancel/Subtract limit amount	Specify the maximum sum that can be voided from a ticket, before prompting for a Control Check.
CC for transaction void	The Control Check to display when using the Void Transaction function, i.e., voiding the entire sales ticket.
CC for subtract next during item registration	The Control Check to display when performing Subtract Next, i.e., voiding an item, during a transaction. The Control Check will be displayed immediately when attempting to use the Subtract function (function # 902).
CC for item cancel during item registration	The Control Check to display when performing an Item Cancel during a transaction.
CC for subtract Next/Item cancel after completion	The Control Check to display when performing Subtract Next, i.e., voiding an item after a transaction. This Control Check will be displayed after the Subtract Next function has been performed.

Parameter	Description
CC for pressing item cancel during Template/Slip print	The Control Check to display when Item Cancel is pressed while a check or receipt are being printed.
CC for return transactions, after completion	The Control Check to display when performing a Return Transaction, i.e., refunding a transaction. The Control Check will be displayed once the cash drawer is opened in a Return Transaction (function # 905).

Control Check Options – Parameters 2

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Control Check Options" with four tabs: Parameters 1, Parameters 2 (selected), Parameters 3, and Parameters 4. The Parameters 2 tab contains a list of control check options, each with a corresponding dropdown menu. The options and their current values are as follows:

Parameter	Value
CC for No-Sale within a transaction	None
CC for No-Sale outside a transaction	None
CC for a credit card tender that exceeds eligible amount	None
CC for saving transactions with partial tender	None
CC for price override	None
CC for bypass check printing	None
CC for bypass check endorsement	None
CC for bypass tender template printing	None
CC for off-line bad account request	CALL MANAGER
CC for off-line supervisor request	None
CC for off-line ECCA request	None

At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: OK, Cancel, and Apply.

Parameter	Description
CC for No-Sale within a transaction	The Control Check to display when performing a No-Sale within a transaction, i.e., opening the Cash Drawer using the No-Sale function (function # 908).
CC for No-Sale outside a transaction	The Control Check to display when performing a No-Sale, i.e., opening the Cash Drawer outside a transaction.
CC for a credit card tender that exceeds eligible amount	The Control Check to display when exceeding the maximum charge amount allowed in a Credit Card Tender.
CC for saving transactions with partial tender	The Control Check to display when performing a Save Transaction on a sales order for which some payment was accepted.
CC for price override	The Control Check to display when a cashier tries to sell an item at a different price than what appears in the PLU file.
CC for bypass check printing	The Control Check to display when canceling the printing on the front of the check. When paying with a check the system is set to print on the front and the back of the check.
CC for bypass check endorsement	The Control Check to display when canceling the printing of the check endorsement on the back of the check.
CC for bypass tender template printing	The Control Check to display when bypassing the Tender Template printing.
CC for off-line bad account request	The Control Check to display if the POS terminal is off-line and a supervisor is required to accept a check tender without performing a Bad-Account Check. This Control Check is related to the flag 'Check Bad Account' in Tender Maintenance.

Parameter	Description
CC for off-line supervisor request	The Control Check to display if the POS terminal is off-line and a supervisor is required to authorize some kind of transaction.
CC for off-line ECCA request	The Control Check to display if the POS terminal is off-line, and an ECCA check is made.

Control Check Options – Parameters 3

The screenshot shows the 'Control Check Options' dialog box with the 'Parameters 3' tab selected. The parameters and their values are as follows:

Parameter	Value
CC for Save/Recall ticket in off-line mode	None
CC for Customer Account off-line	None
CC for Customer Account not on file	None
CC for Customer Account insufficient funds	CALL MANAGER
CC to restrict redemption of Customer Accounts out of sale	None
CC for exceeding qty limit at scanning	ABOVE QNTY LMNT
Scanning qty limit	0.
CC for exceeding max. amount in negative transactions	None
Max. amount for negative transactions	0.00
CC to bypass 'Cashier not found' during offline sign-on	None
CC to print fuel reward voucher on duplicate receipt	None

Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Apply.

Parameter	Description
CC for Save/Recall ticket in off-line mode	The Control Check to display when performing a Save or Recall at the POS terminal in off-line mode.

Parameter	Description
	Each ticket saved in off-line mode is stored in the directory: C:\PCMPOS\QDX with the file name: PXXXYYYY.SAV, where XXX represents the POS number and YYYY represents the ticket number. Transactions saved in off-line mode can only be recalled for the POS terminal they were saved on. The ticket shows the POS terminal number from where the recall must be done. Note The End of Day process deletes *.SAV files from the POS terminal. This means that tickets can be recalled only for the current day.
CC for Customer Account off-line	During off-line mode, you can only recall tickets that were saved in off-line mode. Save/Recall in off-line mode can be performed by using the Customer's ID. The Control Check to display when requesting a customer authorization in a transaction in off-line mode i.e., Cashier is unable to check Customer Account.
CC for a Customer Account not on file	The Control Check to display when requesting a customer authorization in a transaction in which the Customer Account was not found, e.g., when customer is a new customer and their account does not exist.

Parameter	Description
CC for Customer Account insufficient funds	The Control Check to display when a transaction in which the Customer has exceeded their Customer Account limit.
CC to restrict redemption of Customer Accounts out of sale	The Control Check to display when a customer want to withdraw funds from their Customer Account outside of a sale.
CC for exceeding quantity limit at scanning	The Control Check to display when exceeding the maximum quantity of one type of item allowed to be scanned. This is performed by pressing the Multiple key (function #42), then indicating the required amount, and then scanning the item once.
Scanning quantity limit	Enter the maximum number of times an item may be scanned before prompting a Control Check.
CC for exceeding maximum amount in negative transactions	The Control Check to display when exceeding the Maximum Amount of Negative Transactions, i.e., the amount owed to the customer.
Maximum amount for negative transactions	Specify the maximum amount allowed for Negative Transactions in ticket, i.e., the amount owed to the customer.
CC to bypass "Cashier not found" off-line sign-on	If you enable the parameter, <i>Cashier File is resident on POST</i> , you can use this Control Check to bypass the message 'Cashier not found' when signing on in off-line mode.

Parameter	Description
CC to print fuel reward voucher on duplicate receipt	The Control Check to display when requesting authorized personnel to approve reprinting a voucher that results from a credit program. This parameter relates to the function Print Last Transaction, e.g., if slip was ripped, jammed or additional copy is requested.

Control Check Options – Parameters 4

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Control Check Options" with a tab labeled "Parameters 4". The dialog contains six configuration items, each with a text input field or a dropdown menu:

- Maximum negative total amount in order: 0.00
- CC for maximum negative total amount in order: None
- Maximum negative percent per order: 0.000
- CC for maximum negative percent per order: None
- CC for save ticket: None
- CC for recall ticket: None

At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Maximum negative total amount in order	Specify the maximum negative amount allowed in a ticket.

Parameter	Description
CC for maximum negative total amount in order	The Control Check to display when exceeding the maximum negative amount allowed in a ticket. This Control Check is displayed after pressing the <i>Total</i> key.
Maximum negative percent per order	Enter the maximum percentage of a negative sum in the total ticket allowed in a transaction.
CC for maximum negative percent per order	The Control Check to display when exceeding the maximum negative total percentage allowed per ticket.
CC for save ticket	The Control Check to display when performing Save on a ticket.
CC for recall ticket	The Control Check to display when performing Recall on a ticket.

POST User Hooks

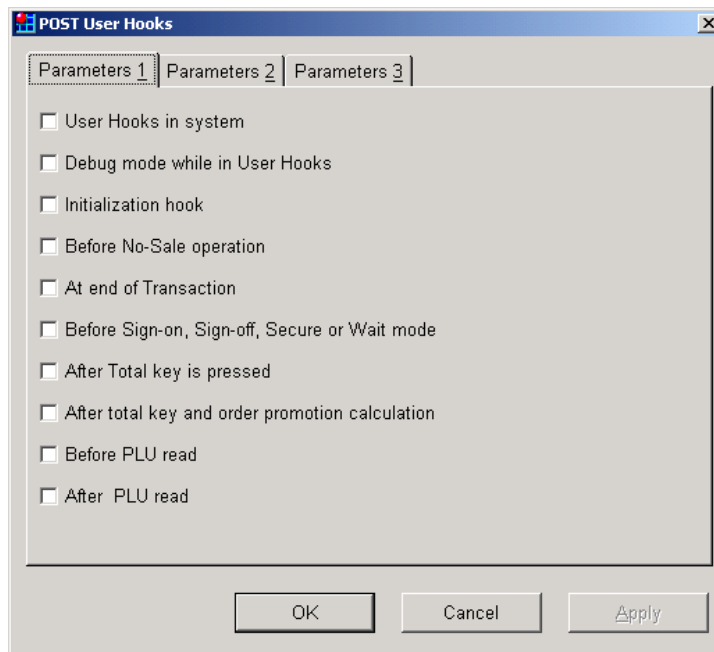
User Hooks, also called Custom Links, are user-definable applications that can be activated by the POST before or after certain POST functions. Selecting *Yes* for a particular Hook specifies that the POST can activate this Hook.

The POST User Hooks dialog box contains four tabs, each of which is described in the following section.

➤ **To set up POST User Hooks**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, and then POST User Hooks. The POST User Hooks tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

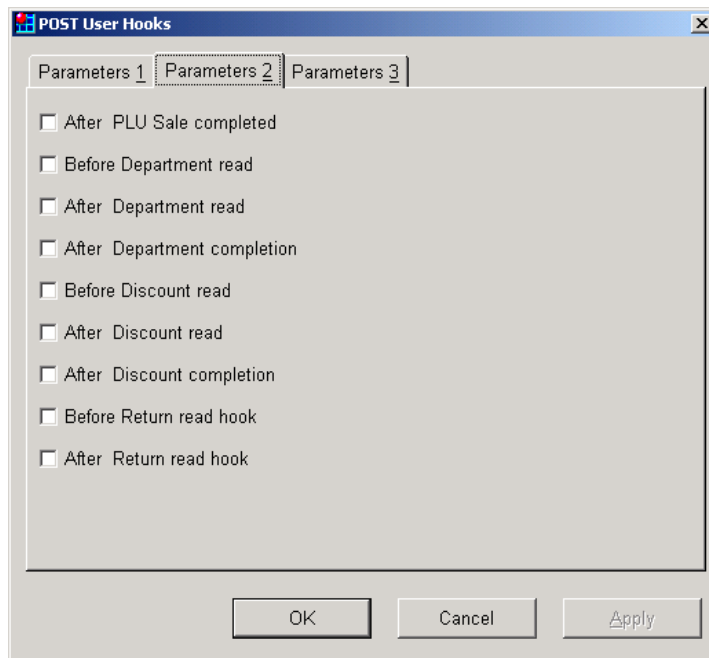
POST User Hooks – Parameters 1



Parameter	Description
User Hooks in System	Select this parameter to enable one or more user hooks at the POST.
Debug mode while in User Hooks	Select this parameter to allow access to Debug Mode when User Hooks are enabled.
Initialization hook	Select this parameter to activate a Hook during the Initialization of the POST.
Before No-Sale operation	Select this parameter to activate a Hook just before the start of the next transaction, i.e., after the cash drawer is closed following the previous operation, for example, Sale Transaction, Pickup, Sign-on, etc.

Parameter	Description
At end of Transaction	Select this parameter to activate a Hook at the end of each Sales Transaction before printing the Trailer message and before sending the Transaction to the Host.
Before Sign-on, Sign-off, Secure or Wait mode	Select this parameter to execute the Hook before Sign-on, Sign-off, Secure mode and Start/Start Wait mode.
After Total key is pressed	Select this parameter to activate the Hook immediately after the total key is pressed and before any operation is executed.
After total key and order promotion calculation	Select this parameter to activate the Hook after pressing the Total key and the balance due is adjusted according to the Order Promotion.
Before PLU read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after entering or scanning an item but before the item information is read from the item file.
After PLU read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the item information is read but before the information is processed in any way.

POST User Hooks – Parameter 2

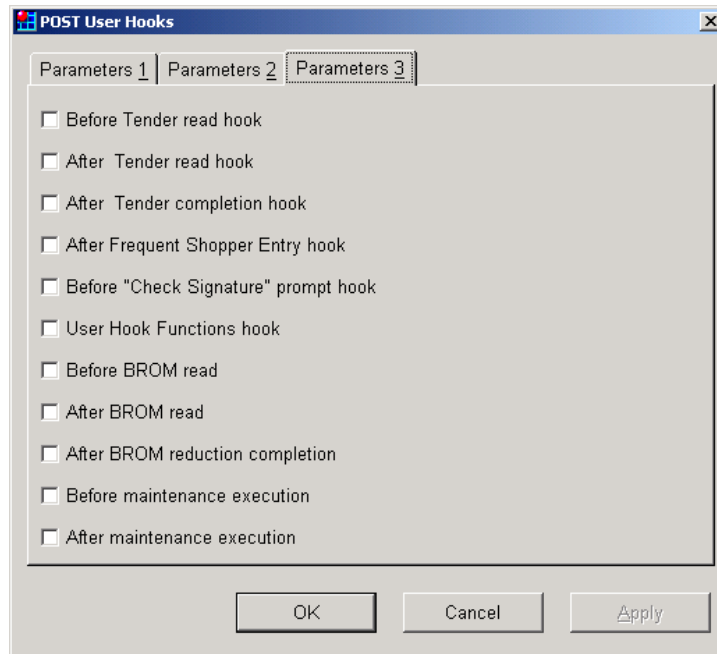


Parameter	Description
After PLU Sale completed	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the Item Transaction is completed.
Before Department read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after entering a department but before the department information is read from the item file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Department Sale execution is continued or terminated.

Parameter	Description
After Department read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the item information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Department Sale execution is continued or terminated.
After Department completion	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the Department Sale is completed.
Before Discount read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after selecting the discount but before the discount information is read from the discount file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Discount execution is continued or terminated.
After Discount read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the discount information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Discount execution is continued or terminated.
After Discount completion	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the Discount is completed.
Before Return read hook	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after selecting the return but before the return information is read from the return file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Return execution is continued or terminated.

Parameter	Description
After Return read hook	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the return information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Return execution is continued or terminated.

POST User Hooks – Parameters 3



Parameter	Description
Before Tender read hook	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after selecting the tender but before the tender information is read from the Tender file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Tender execution is completed or terminated.
After Tender read hook	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the Tender information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Tender execution is continued or terminated.

Parameter	Description
After Tender completion hook	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after tendering is completed.
After Frequent Shopper Entry hook	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after the Frequent Shopper entry but before it is validated. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue or re-enter the Frequent Shopper entry.
Before "Check Signature" prompt hood	Select this parameter to execute the Hook just before the Check Signature prompt. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue or terminate the Tender execution.
User Hook Functions hook	Select the parameter to enable the Hook that executes the various User Hook functions. The Hook function must be first added to the keyboard layout or into the POST menu. Using a Hook function will result in execution of this Hook with the Hook function number.
Before BROM read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook just before the promotion information is read from the database.
After BROM read	Select this parameter to execute the Hook just after the promotion information is read from the database.
After BROM reduction completion	Select this parameter to execute the Hook after Reduction is completed. Only Reductions have an 'After Completion' Hook because Promotions and Offers are executed as a special PLU sale, therefore, the 'PLU After Completion' Hook covers this purpose.

Parameter	Description
Before maintenance execution	Select this parameter to execute the Hook just before every maintenance execution. The return from the Hook will determine whether or not to continue execution of this maintenance (OK/BAD).
After maintenance execution	Select this parameter to execute the Hook just after every maintenance execution.

General POST Parameters

This screen contains general POS terminal parameters. The General POST Parameters dialog box contains six tabs, each of which is described in the following sections:

- Scanning
- Tendering
- Cards
- EOD Behavior
- Cost Plus
- General

➤ **To access the General Post Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, and then General POST Parameters. The General POST Parameters tabbed dialog box appears
- 2 On each tab, select the relevant options and checkboxes, as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Scanning Tab

The screenshot shows a window titled "General POST Parameters" with a tabbed interface. The "Scanning" tab is selected. It contains several configuration options:

- ☒ Force Department/Price entry of unknown items
- ☐ Do not allow sales in tender mode
- ☐ Disallow quantity with scanning
- Maximum number of digits for department value: 9
- Maximum number of digits for media value: 9
- MSU rounding option: 34 33 33 (dropdown menu)

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Force Department/Price entry of unknown items	Select this parameter to force cashier to enter the department and the price of unknown items. (Items not in the system.)
Do not allow sales in tender mode	Select this parameter to disallow a cashier from performing a sale (ring or scan item) while in Tender model (tender key has been pressed).

Parameter	Description
Disallow quantity with scanning	Select this parameter to prohibit the use of the Multiple ('QTY' key) when scanning several items of the same type. If selected, the cashier will be required to scan each item individually.
Maximum number of digits for department value	Specify the maximum number of digits including decimal places for a key-entered department sale entry.
Maximum number of digits for media value	Specify the maximum number of digits including decimal places that can be entered as a Tender Value.
MSU rounding option	Specify the MSU (Multiple Sale Units) Rounding method when items are sold separately. Options are: • \$.34, \$.34, \$.32 • \$.34, \$.33, \$.33 Selecting 34, 33, 33 defines that if three items are sold for \$1.00, the first item is sold for \$.34, and the second and third items are each sold for \$.33.

Tender Tab

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "General POST Parameters" with a tabbed interface. The "Tender" tab is selected. It contains three settings: a checkbox for "Allow foreign currency change", a checkbox for "Void tender at 'Check Signature' allowed", and a numeric input field for "Second tender for Payouts/Receipts" with the value "0". At the bottom are "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply" buttons.

Parameter	Description
Allow foreign currency change	Check this parameter to allow foreign currency change to be given to a customer. For a transaction that has been over tendered or partially tendered with one or more foreign currency tenders, the cashier has the option to give change in host currency (cash) or as any foreign currency in the transaction. Refer to the <i>POS Terminal User's Guide</i> , for more information on foreign currency change.

Parameter	Description
Void tender at "Check Signature" allowed	If checked, a tender can be voided when the 'check signature' prompt displays on the POS terminal. ('Check Signature' displays if the appropriate parameter in the tender record is checked.) If blank, the cashier is not allowed to void a tender during tendering with 'check signature'.
Second tender for Payout/Receipts	Specify an (optional) second tender number for receipts and payouts.

Cards Tab

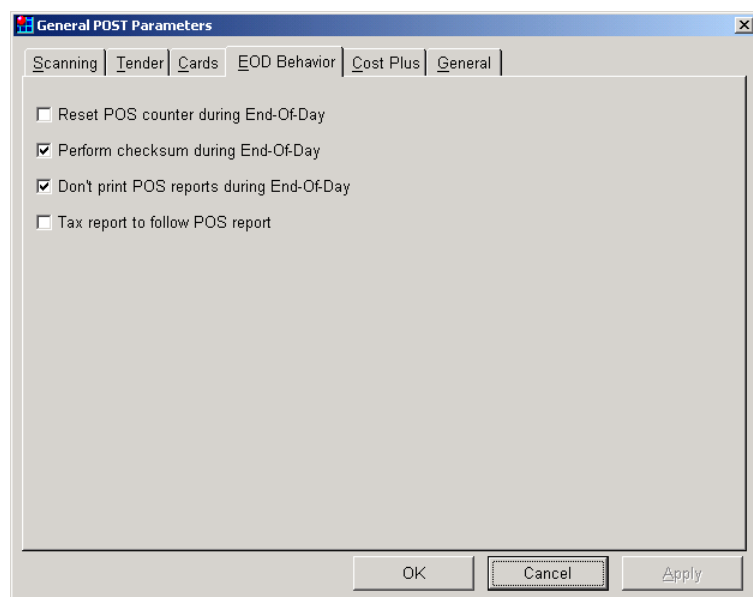
The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "General POST Parameters". It has several tabs: "Scanning", "Tender", "Cards" (which is selected), "EOD Behavior", "Cost Plus", and "General". The "Cards" tab contains the following settings:

- "Times to swipe card before manual entry" with a numeric input field set to "3".
- "Seconds before credit card number can be entered" with a numeric input field set to "20".
- A checkbox labeled "Suppress Fly Buys check digit on receipt and transaction", which is currently unchecked.
- A checkbox labeled "Key - in Fly Buys number without check digit", which is also currently unchecked.

At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Times to swipe card before manual entry	Specify the number of times a credit card is swiped but the POST fails to read the card number, after which the Cashier can enter the number manually.
Seconds before credit card number can be entered	Specify the number of seconds once a credit card is swiped several times but the POST fails to read the card number, after which a message is displayed prompting the Cashier to enter the number manually.
Suppress Fly Buys check digit on receipt and transaction	Select this parameter to suppress printing of Check Digit on receipt and transaction. Note: Fly-Buy is a card that enables the customer to accrue flying mileage with each purchase. Mileage is earned based on the purchase amount.
Key-in Fly Buys number without check digit	Select this parameter to allow the Cashier to key-enter the Fly-Buy Card number without a check digit.

EOD Behavior Tab



Parameter	Description
Reset POS counter during End-of-Day	Check this parameter if you want to reset Transaction numbers to zero with every End of Day.
Perform checksum during End-of-Day	If checked, this process compares the PLU files in the POS terminals to the PLU file on MFS1, during the End of Day procedure. If differences are found, the POSTs are updated after EOD.
Don't print POS reports during End-of-Day	If POS reports are not required to print at End of Day, check this parameter.
Tax report to follow POS report	If checked, the Tax Report prints immediately after the POS Report.

Cost Plus Tab

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "General POST Parameters" with a tabbed interface. The "Cost Plus" tab is selected. It contains a checkbox labeled "Cost Plus in system". Below it are two text input fields: "Cost Plus taxable surcharge department" and "Cost Plus non-taxable surcharge department", both containing the value "0". At the bottom are "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply" buttons.

Parameter	Description
Cost Plus in system	Select this parameter if your store operates on a 'Cost Plus' system. If you check this parameter, you must also set the cost plus ranges and percentages.
Cost Plus taxable surcharge department	Enter the department number to which a taxable surcharge will be added.
Cost Plus non-taxable surcharge department	Enter the department number to which a non-taxable surcharge will be added.

General Tab

Set the various General POS parameters and options.

General POST Parameters

Scanning | Tender | Cards | EOD Behavior | Cost Plus | **General**

Default minimum purchase amount for promotions: 0.00

Type of extended balance due to display: Food Stamp

☐ Multiple language in system

☐ Always read PLUs from PC

☐ Check Guarantee functionality

Sales printer sound: Always

Supervisor privileges: ☒ 1 ☒ 2 ☒ 3 ☒ 4 ☒ 5 ☒ 6 ☒ 7 ☒ 8

☒ Prompt for Customer's ID on Save Transaction

☐ Cashier file is resident on POST

☐ Bad Account File is resident on POST

☒ Prompt large total on cashier display

☒ Consecutive scan count display

Euro Rate: 0

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Default minimum purchase amount for promotions	Enter the default minimum purchase amount required before a promotion offer can be given.
Type of extended balance due to display	Select the type of Balance Due, to display on the customer display. Options are: • None • Food Stamps If 'None' is selected, only 'Balance Due' will

Parameter	Description
	display on the customer display. If 'Food Stamp' is selected, 'Balance Due' will display on the top line of the display and 'F/S Subtotal' will display on the bottom line of the display.
Multiple language in system	Select this parameter to support multiple languages in the system.
Always read PLUs from PC	Select this parameter to have if you want the POSTs to ignore their own PLU files, and read only from the MFS1 PLU file.
Check Guarantee functionality	This feature is currently not implemented.
Sales printer sound	Select the required option from the dropdown list: • None: No beep • Always: Beeps with every item • Buffer printing: Allows buffer printing without the beeps
Supervisor privileges (Range 1 to 8)	Select the number of supervisor privilege levels desired, in order to determine the proper authorization level for handling events, such as Control Checks, at the POS terminal.

Parameter	Description
Prompt for Customer's ID on Save Transaction	Select this checkbox to enable cashier to enter the customer's ID before saving a transaction. Recalling a transaction can also be done by entering the customer's ID. The customer ID prints on the saved ticket. If cashier do not want to enter the customer's ID or if the customer does not have ID available, they may select 'No' when prompted. Recall the transaction in three ways: • Enter the Terminal and Ticket numbers • Enter the Customer's ID • Scan the barcode
Cashier file is resident on POST	Optionally use this parameter to load the cashier file onto the POS terminals. When selected, this option provides better control of off-line cashier sign-on. If the POS terminals are off-line, cashier passwords are validated against the cashier file that is resident on the POS Terminal. Notes: 1. If you do not select this option, POS terminals receive cashier data when cashiers sign on or when supervisor authorization is required. 2. If your store works with the parameter, <i>System integrity in system</i>, add the

Parameter	Description
	EMPL.QDX file to the QDX Files Checksum Table in Field Engineer's Utilities.
	3. Loading a large Cashier File onto the POS terminal takes up memory and can affect performance.
Bad Account File is resident on POST	Optionally, use this parameter to This parameter provides the option to load the Bad Accounts file onto the POS terminals. To load the file onto the POS terminal for the first time, you must either perform a Cold Start or run a general batch file, which will insert all bad account records. Maintenance is sent to the POS terminal any time a change is made to the bad accounts file in the Back Office via Bad Account Maintenance. Any changes made to Bad Accounts through General Batches, generates maintenance to POS terminals. While in off-line mode, bad accounts are validated against the Bad Accounts File, which is resident on the POS terminal. Notes: 1. If your store works with the parameter, <i>System integrity in system</i>, add the ACCT.QDX file to the QDX Files Checksum Table in Field Engineer's Utilities. 2. Loading a large Bad Accounts File onto the POS terminal takes up memory and can affect performance.

Parameter	Description
Prompt large total on cashier display	Select this checkbox to display a large 'Balance Due' message on the Cashier Display, after the <i>Total</i> key is pressed, providing for easy viewing by the Cashier.
Consecutive scan count display	Check this option to enable a cashier to see the number of times a specific item has been consecutively scanned. For example, if an item is scanned five times consecutively, this information is display on the cashier screen. This enables the cashier to monitor the correct number of consecutively scanned items. Weighed items whose details (item type and weight) are identical are also included in this function. The Consecutive Scan Count Display is activated either by scanning single items, or by using the <i>Quantity</i> key.
Euro Rate	Enter the value that represents the conversion rate between the Euro and local currency.

Variable Price/Weight Item

The Variable Price/Weight Items option enables you to define an item code (UPC Number System) for variable price or variable weight items; where the price or weight is embedded in the PLU number.

The first two digits of the PLU item number may be used to represent an item with a variable price or weight.

For example, PLU items whose numbers begin with the digits 02 are sold for \$ 2.99 (e.g., pre-packaged hot dogs); items whose numbers begin with 04, weigh 1 pound (e.g., pre-packaged tomatoes). This is called a 'variable price/weight' code. The price/weight codes are fixed by the system, and they can be used as required.

The codes 02, 04, 99, 20 through 29, and 971 are available for variable price or weight items. In order to use any of these codes for PLU items, a number of parameters have to be defined, as described below.

➤ **To define Variable Price/Weight Item Codes**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, and then Variable Price/Weight Item. The Variable Options dialog box appears.

The dialog box titled "Variable Options" contains a table with columns for starting digits: 02, 04, 99, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, and 971. The rows represent different options:

Option	02	04	99	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	971
Code in use	☒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
PCDV required	☒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Digits in prices	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Decimal places	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Price [] or Weight [x]	☒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Apply.

- Set the appropriate options and parameters as defined below.

Parameter	Description
Code in use	This code is used, meaning that a variable weight or price is encoded in the PLU number.
PCDV required	Check this parameter if price check digit verification is required.
Digits in price	Enter the greatest number of digits in UPC price or weight field in UPC.
Decimal places	Enter the number of decimal places for the price or weight field in UPC.
Price or Weight	Check this field if the code denotes a variable weight. Leave blank, if the code denotes a price.

- Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Gift Card

The Gift Card option enables you to define gift vouchers and gift cards, for purchase by the shopper at the POS terminal. These gift cards and vouchers are assigned a dollar value and can be processed as tender at redemption time.

The Gift Card dialog box contains two tabs, each of which is described in the following sections.

➤ **To set up Gift Cards and Vouchers**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters and then Gift Card. The Gift Certificates tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Gift Cards

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Gift Certificates". It has two tabs: "Gift Vouchers" and "Gift Cards", with "Gift Cards" being the active tab. Inside the dialog, there is a checked checkbox labeled "Gift Card In System". Below this, there are three rows of input fields: "PLU Range" with "From" and "To" fields, "Amount Value" with "From" and "To" fields, and "PLU Number for Recharging" with a single text field. The "From" field for "Amount Value" contains "5.00" and the "To" field contains "200.00". The "PLU Number for Recharging" field contains "10000". At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "Ok", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Gift Card in System	Select this option to enable the Gift Card feature in the system.
PLU Range From:/To:	Enter the range of PLU numbers reserved for gift cards. For example, PLU 1000 may be Gift Card \$ 25.00, and PLU 1001 may be Gift Card \$ 50.00.
Amount Value From:/To:	Enter the minimum and maximum range of values for a gift card. The valid dollar range is from \$.01 to \$ 500.00.
PLU for Recharging	Enter the PLU number designated for recharging the gift card.

Gift Vouchers

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Gift Certificates". It has two tabs: "Gift Vouchers" (selected) and "Gift Cards". The "Gift Vouchers" tab contains the following controls:

- A checked checkbox labeled "Gift Voucher Printing in System".
- Two text input fields for "PLU Range", labeled "From" and "To".
- A single-digit text input field for "Template Number".
- A dropdown menu for "Tender for Member Voucher Redemption" with "COMP GIFT CERT" selected.
- At the bottom are three buttons: "Ok", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Gift Voucher Printing in System	Select this option to enable gift voucher printing in the system.
PLU Range From:/To:	Enter the user-defined range of valid Gift Voucher numbers. Each voucher can include up to 13 digits (EAN code starting with 24 and module 10 check digit).
Template Number:	Enter the template number for generating and printing the gift voucher at the POS terminal.
Tender for Member Voucher Redemption	Select from the dropdown list, the Tender Type for gift voucher redemption.

POS Receipt Setup

This menu contains all the facilities for setting up the various receipt printing options:

- Receipt Logo
- Receipt Header/Footer
- Retailer Information
- Organize Receipt
- Receipt Printing, Signs and Bonus Buy

Receipt Logo

Use this utility to set up and print company logos on POS terminal receipts.

The system accepts only 1-bit, black and white .BMP (bitmap) graphic files. These files must reside in the C:\PCMASTER\SEQ directory.

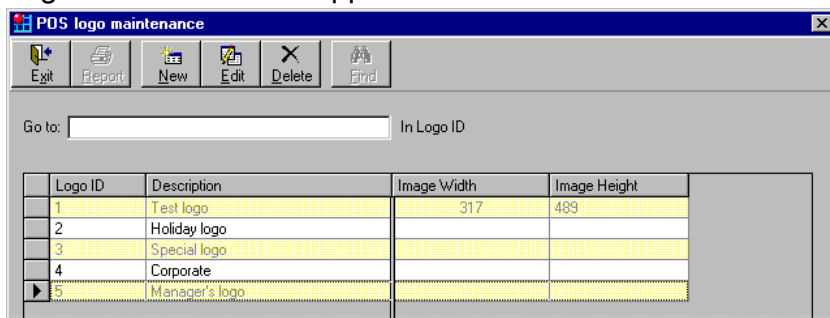
You must set logo dimensions in a suitable graphics or paint program. Make sure that logo sizes match the following specifications for the appropriate printer type, as described on the following page.

Printer Type	BMP File Size
Epson TM930	Width - 180 pixels maximum Height - No limit
Epson TMT80 (Thermal)	Width - 192 pixels maximum Height - No limit
Axiohm 7156 (Thermal)	Width - 448 pixels maximum Height - 384 pixels maximum
Note: Although the dimensions above are the maximum allowed, you cannot use both at the maximum size. For example, if width is 448, height must be less than 384. The maximum size must be equal to or less than width x height, with a maximum of 172032. The logo image is loaded into printer memory when the POS terminal is powered up. This allows high speed printing of the logo.	
Fujitsu	Width - 400 pixels maximum Height - 48 pixels maximum The logo is loaded into printer memory.

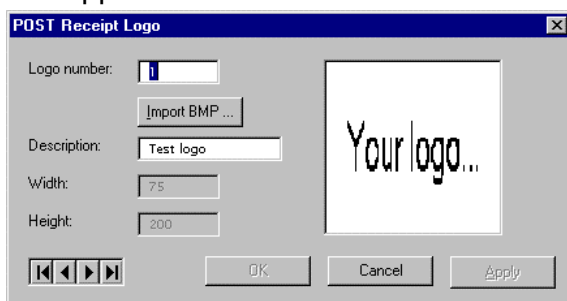
To enable printing of a logo, specify the required logo number for each POS terminal, in POS Configuration. (For details, refer to the beginning of this chapter).

➤ **To set up a receipt logo**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Receipt Setup, and then Receipt Logo. The POS Logo Maintenance list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The POST Receipt Logo dialog box appears.



- 3 Enter a logo number.
- 4 Click *Import BMP...* to choose an image. Select the required image file. A preview of the image displays.
- 5 Type in a description.
- 6 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

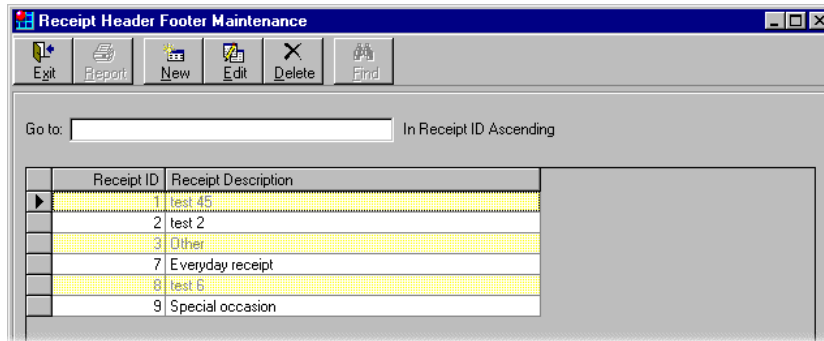
Receipt Header Footer

The Receipt Header/Footer Maintenance option lets you design the headers and footers that print on customer receipts. Both the header (top lines of the receipt) and the footer (bottom lines of the receipt) can contain up to 10 lines of text, and they can be printed in normal or bold characters, and centered or left-aligned.

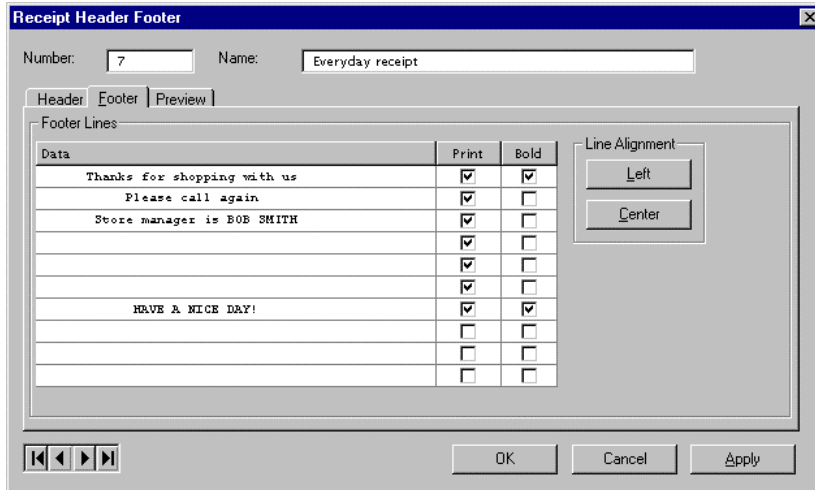
You can create various headers and footers and link them to different POS terminals.

➤ **To set up a receipt header/footer**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Receipt Setup, and then Receipt Header/Footer. The Receipt Header/Footer list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The Receipt Header/Footer dialog box appears.



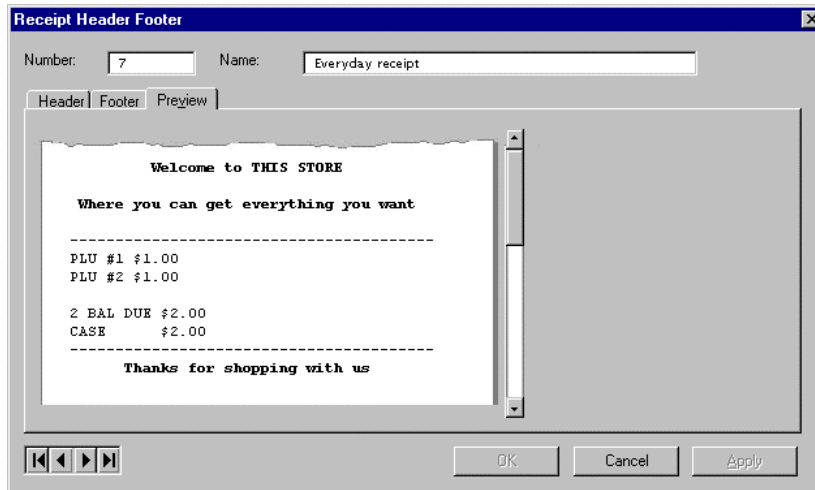
The dialog box titled "Receipt Header Footer" has three tabs: "Header", "Footer", and "Preview". The "Footer" tab is selected. At the top, there are two text boxes: "Number:" with the value "7" and "Name:" with the value "Everyday receipt". Below the tabs, there is a section labeled "Footer Lines" containing a table with three columns: "Data", "Print", and "Bold". To the right of the table is a "Line Alignment" section with two buttons: "Left" and "Center". At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Data	Print	Bold
Thanks for shopping with us	☒	☒
Please call again	☒	☐
Store manager is BOB SMITH	☒	☐
	☒	☐
	☒	☐
HAVE A NICE DAY!	☒	☒
	☐	☐
	☐	☐
	☐	☐

The *Header* and *Footer* tabs look identical. They both allow you to enter up to 10 lines of text.

- 3 Enter a number and name.
- 4 Type in the header and footer text.
- 5 You can mark each line to print (either text you enter, or a blank line) and set the text to bold. Also, you can specify each line to be left or center aligned.

- 6 To see a preview of how the header and footer will appear on the receipt, click on the *Preview* tab.



- 7 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Once headers and footer are designed, you can link them to the POS terminals. This is performed in POST configuration. (For details, refer to beginning of this chapter).

Retailer Information

This option provides access to screens where you can enter the retailer information to be printed on the multi-part receipts, when tendering with a credit card.

➤ **To define Retailer Information**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Receipt Setup, and then Retailer Information 1 - 5. The Retailer Information tabbed dialog box appears.

Retailer Informations

Information 1 | Information 2 | Information 3 | Information 4 | Information 5

Line number 1	Hilltop Country Store
Line number 2	101 Union Street
Line number 3	Minneapolis, MN 55343
Line number 4	www.HILLTOPCOUNTRYSTORE.COM
Line number 5	

OK Cancel Apply

Information 1 through Information 5 tabs look identical.

- 2 Each tab enables you to enter details of up to five credit cards retailers (one credit card per tab). Enter up to 5 lines of information. These lines are printed on a multi-part receipt below the header, during a transaction with a transaction with a credit card.

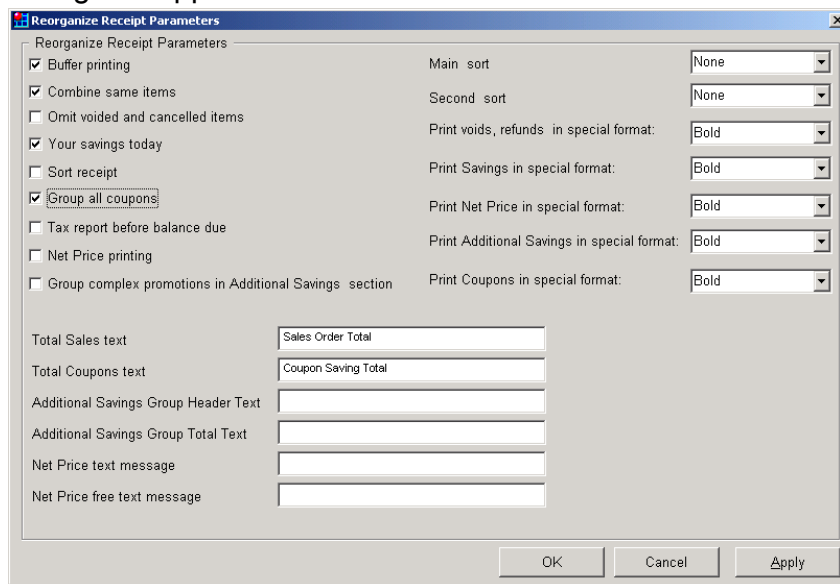
- 3 After entering retailer information, link it to the corresponding tender type. This is done via the Retailer Information field in the Tender Types option (see *Chapter 5, Database Management* in the *Office User's Guide*).
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Organize Receipt

The Reorganize Receipt option is used to give you maximum flexibility over the organization and order of sales information on the customer receipt. You can also print summaries of customer savings.

➤ **To set up the Organize Receipt option**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Receipt Setup, and then Organize Receipt Information (1-5). The Reorganize Receipt Parameters dialog box appears.



The Reorganize Receipt Parameters dialog box is shown. It contains the following sections and controls:

- Reorganize Receipt Parameters**
 - ☒ Buffer printing
 - ☒ Combine same items
 - ☐ Omit voided and cancelled items
 - ☒ Your savings today
 - ☐ Sort receipt
 - ☒ Group all coupons
 - ☐ Tax report before balance due
 - ☐ Net Price printing
 - ☐ Group complex promotions in Additional Savings section
- Main sort**: None (dropdown)
- Second sort**: None (dropdown)
- Print voids, refunds in special format:** Bold (dropdown)
- Print Savings in special format:** Bold (dropdown)
- Print Net Price in special format:** Bold (dropdown)
- Print Additional Savings in special format:** Bold (dropdown)
- Print Coupons in special format:** Bold (dropdown)

Text input fields:

- Total Sales text: Sales Order Total
- Total Coupons text: Coupon Saving Total
- Additional Savings Group Header Text: (empty)
- Additional Savings Group Total Text: (empty)
- Net Price text message: (empty)
- Net Price free text message: (empty)

Buttons: OK, Cancel, Apply

- 2 Select the appropriate options and parameters, as described below.

Parameter	Description
Buffer Printing	Check this parameter to store transaction information in the printer buffer (memory), until completion of the transaction. Use this option to enable sorting of the items. When buffered printing is enabled, the printer beeps each time an item is entered. You can, if required, set up the POS terminal back office menu to include the function to 'Abort buffer printing'.
Combine same items	If you check this parameter, multiples of an item prints as one entry on the receipt, regardless of the order in which they are rung up. This option works only if you select Buffer Printing.
Omit voided and cancelled items	Check this parameter to avoid printing voided and canceled items. This works only if you have select Buffer Printing.
Yours savings today	Select this parameter if you want to print this text line with the relevant savings description and amount on the bottom of the customer receipt. If items on promotion, reduction, offer or discount have been rung up, the relevant message prints. (Requires Buffer Printing.)
Sort receipt	If you want the customer receipt sorted, check this parameter. To sort receipts, you must check the Buffer Printing parameter.
Group all coupons	Select this parameter to group all coupons together on the customer receipt. (Requires Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt.)

Parameter	Description
Tax report before balance due	Select this parameter to print the tax report before 'Balance Due' on the customer receipt. If blank, the tax report will print after 'Balance Due' on the customer receipt.
Net Price printing	Select this parameter to print net price for items on promotion. When set to Yes, items on promotion will print regular price, promotion amount and net price on the customer receipt (per item).
Group complex promotions in Additional Savings section	Select this parameter to include complex promotions in the 'Additional Savings' section on the customer receipt. Examples of complex promotions include: • Enhanced promotions with the following attributes set: - Reward types other than credits or credits per item - Give reward on the highest/lowest - Minimum purchase - 2nd Thresholds - Minimum Item weight - Maximum Item weight - Coupon Type of one time only or one time per reward • Enhanced promotions that require a member card • Group promotions that require a member card • Level promotions that require a member card

Parameter	Description
Main sort	Select one of the sort options from the dropdown list: • None • Department Name • Department Name + Total • Item Name • Price Ascending • Price Descending
Second sort	Select one of the sort options from the dropdown list: • None • Alpha • Price Ascending • Price Descending
Print voids, refunds in special format	Select one of the print options from the dropdown list: • None • Bold • Italic • Bold Italic • Color
Print Savings in special format	Select one of the print options from the dropdown list: • None • Bold • Italic • Bold Italic • Color

Parameter	Description
Print Net Price in special format	Select one of the print options from the dropdown list: • None • Bold • Italic • Bold Italic • Color
Print Additional Savings in special format	Select one of the print options from the dropdown list: • None • Bold • Italic • Bold Italic • Color
Print Coupons in special format	Select one of the print options from the dropdown list: • None • Bold • Italic • Bold Italic • Color
Total Sales text	If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides a text description for the Total Sales line on the customer receipt. The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print as a 'Total Sales' summary, after all the sorted item and department sales entries, on the customer receipt.

Parameter	Description
Total Coupons text	If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides a text description for the Total Coupon line on the customer receipt. The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print after the 'sorted' coupons, on the customer receipt.
Additional Savings Group Header Text	Enter the header to print for 'Additional Savings Group' promotions on the customer receipt. This is a free-form text field and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.
Additional Savings Group Total Text	Enter the text to print for the 'Additional Group Savings' total line on the customer receipt. This is a free-form text field and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.
Net Price text message	If the <i>Net Price Printing</i> parameter is enabled, this parameter defines the text to print on the net price line. This is a free-form text field and the net price description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.
Net Price free text message	If the <i>Net Price Printing</i> parameter is enabled, this parameter defines the text to print on the net price line when an item is free (i.e., net price is zero). This is a free-form text field and the net price free description can be up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Receipt Printing, Signs & Bonus Buys

This feature contains receipt printing options and lets you specify the various signs to print on the POS terminal receipts.

The Receipt Printing, Signs, Bonus Buy dialog box contains five tabs:

- General
- General 1
- Signs
- Bonus Buy
- Signatures

➤ **To set up Receipt Printing, Signs and Bonus Buy Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Receipt Setup, and then Receipt Printing, Signs, and Bonus Buy. The Receipt Printing, Signs and Bonus Buy tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On the five tabs, set the options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

General Tab

Receipt Printing, Signs, Bonus Buy

General | General 1 | Signs | Bonus Buy | Signatures

☒ Print currency symbol on receipt

☒ Print "Bal. Due" each time subtotal is pressed

☒ Print "Bal. Due" after each tender

☒ Print coupons report on ticket

☒ Print duplicate receipt on loans and pickups

☐ Print separate receipts for each tender on pick-ups

☒ Print "PLU not found" slip

☐ Print "PLU not found on inquiry" slip

☒ Print cashier name on receipt

☐ Suppress printing points on receipt

☐ Print Saving Plus Total on Receipt

☒ Subtract cashier declarations from POS reports

☒ Print change at the end of Receipt

☐ Use Item Description for UPC5 Coupon attachment

☐ Omit Tax Report total

☒ Print Balance Due in large font

☐ Omit "your savings" summary report

☐ Omit Coupon Total in "your savings" group

☐ Detailed Item Savings

☐ Omit Item Savings Total

☐ Omit Savings Total

☐ Present all Total Savings as negative values

☐ Print Savings Marketing Message

☐ Suppress signs from promotions printing

Print total number of Items on receipt :

Level of detail on audit printer :

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Print currency symbol on receipt	Select this parameter to print the currency symbol as specified on the Signs tab on the customer receipt (e.g., \$).
Print "Bal. Due" each time subtotal is pressed	Select this parameter to print the message 'Balance due' each time the subtotal key is pressed.
Print "Bal. Due" after each tender	Select this parameter to print a message 'Balance due' on the customer receipt each time a cashier tenders an amount.

Parameter	Description
Print coupons report on ticket	Select this parameter to print an order summary of coupons within a transaction, on the customer receipt.
Print duplicate receipt on loans and pickups	Select this parameter to print a duplicate receipt on loans and pickups at the POS terminals.
Print separate receipts for each tender on pick-ups	Select this parameter to print a separate receipt for each tender on pick-ups.
Print "PLU not found" slip	Select this parameter to print a slip each time a non-existent PLU is entered. A cashier may be forced to enter the item's department number and price, which both appear on the slip. There is a blank space for somebody to write in the item description. This information can then be used later to update the item file.
Print "PLU not found on inquiry" slip	Select this parameter to print a slip each time a non-existent PLU is entered on a price inquiry.
Print cashier name on receipt	Select this parameter to print the cashier's name on the receipt.
Suppress printing points on receipt	Select this parameter to prevent member card points from printing on the receipt.
Print Saving Plus Total on Receipt	Select this checkbox to print savings plus total details on the customer receipt. The 'Savings Plus Total' is the sales total of items purchased in departments that have the attribute, 'Include in Savings Plus Total', set (refer to <i>Office User's Guide, Chapter 5, Department Maintenance</i> , for details).

Parameter	Description
Subtract cashier declarations from POS reports	Select this checkbox to subtract cashier declarations from media totals on the Over Limit Cashier/POS Report. This report shows which cashiers/POS have more cash (media) in their drawer than the amount specified in the <i>Cash in Drawer Limit</i> parameter. If this parameter is selected, cashier declarations are subtracted from the media totals, when calculating the actual amount in the cash drawer for this report.
Print total number of Items on a receipt	Select this parameter to print the total number of items purchased on the customer receipt. Options are: • None • On Balance Due Line • On Separate Line
Level of detail on audit printer	Select the level of detail to log to the audit printer or Electronic Journal. Options are: • Minimum • Medium • Full
Print change at the end of Receipt	If 'Yes', the customer's change will print at the end of the customer receipt, after the tax report. If 'No', the customer's change will print after 'Balance Due' and the amount tendered.
Use Item Description for UPC5 Coupon attachment	Select this parameter to print UPC5 attached item description on the receipt.

Parameter	Description
Omit Tax Report total	If parameter, <i>Display Individual Tax on Receipt</i> , is selected, a Tax Report will print on the customer receipt, which lists taxable amount and tax due, by individual tax rate. The <i>Omit Tax Report Total</i> parameter provides the option to print an additional 'Total Tax' summary line for the Tax Report on the customer receipt. When this parameter is set to No, this 'Total Tax' summary line will print on the receipt.
Print Balance Due in large font	Select this checkbox to print 'Balance Due' in a large font on the customer receipt.
Omit "your savings" summary report	Select this checkbox to omit printing 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the receipt. (Buffer Printing not required.)
Omit Coupon Total in "your savings" group	Select this parameter to omit printing a coupon total line (text line 'TOTAL CPNS' with count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.
Detail Item Savings	Select this checkbox to print savings, by item, in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.
Omit Item Savings Total	Select this checkbox to omit printing an Item Savings Total line (with count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

Parameter	Description
Omit Savings Total	Select this checkbox to omit printing a savings total line (text line 'TOTAL SAVINGS', with count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.
Present all Total Savings as negative values	Select this parameter to print all savings totals in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report, as negative values on the customer receipt (i.e., a minus sign to the left of the value).
Print Savings Marketing Message	Select this checkbox to print a Savings Message, highlighting the dollar amount and percent savings, on the customer receipt, for qualifying customers. When this parameter is selected, the <i>Saving Marketing Percent %</i> parameter, below, determines what marketing savings message will print on the customer receipt. If this parameter, <i>Print Savings Marketing Message</i> , is not selected, a 'You Could Have Saved' message will print on the customer receipt.
Suppress signs from promotions printing	Select this checkbox to suppress signs from promotions printing.

General 1 Tab

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Receipt Printing, Signs, Bonus Buy". It has five tabs: "General", "General 1", "Signs", "Bonus Buy", and "Signatures". The "General 1" tab is selected. The dialog contains the following fields:

- Order Tax Report header: [Empty text box]
- Your Savings Today text: [Your Total Saving Today]
- Savings Marketing Percent %: [0.00]
- Template for Savings Marketing Message with percent: [Empty text box]
- Template for Savings Marketing Message without percent: [Empty text box]
- Template for Member card/Frequent shopper print: [Empty text box]
- Member Card Saving Message: [Empty text box]
- Vendor Coupon description: [Vendor Coupons]
- Store Coupon description: [Store Coupons]
- Bonus Coupon description: [Bonus Coupons]
- Triple Coupon description: [Triple Coupons]

At the bottom right of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Order Tax Report header	Enter the Order Tax Report Header to print on the customer receipt (refer to parameter <i>Display Individual Tax on Receipt</i>). The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print as the first line in the Tax Report on the customer receipt. If this field is left blank, the default header (TAX-CODE, TAXABLE-VAL and TAX-VALUE) will print.

Parameter	Description
Your Savings Today text	Enter the header to print on the summary savings report (refer to parameter 'Your Savings Today') on the bottom of the customer receipt. The field is a free-form text parameter and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters. If this field is left blank, the default header ('Your Savings Today') will print.
Savings Marketing Percent %	Enter the savings marketing percent. If this percent is matched or exceeded in the sale order, the Marketing Message with Percent template, below, will print on the customer receipt. If the savings in the sales transaction does not reach this percent, the Marketing Message without Percent template, below, will print on the customer receipt.
Template for Savings Marketing Message with percent	Enter the name of the template for the Savings Marketing Message with Percent as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts. This 'Savings Message' will print on the customer receipt when the percent savings in the order exceeds the value in the <i>Saving Marketing Percent</i> parameter above.
Template for Savings Marketing Message without percent	Enter the name of the template for the Savings Marketing Message without Percent as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts. This message will print on the customer receipt when the percent savings in the order does not exceed the value in the <i>Saving Marketing Percent</i> parameter, above.

Parameter	Description
Template for Member card/Frequent shopper print	Enter the name of the template for the Member Card/Frequent Shopper as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts.
Member Card Saving Message	This parameter provides the option to define a member card saving message (for example, 'Club Royal Savings') that will print for member promotions in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the bottom of the customer receipt. If this field is left blank, the description from the promotion record (for example, '10% Bakery Discount') will print.
Vendor Coupon description	This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined vendor coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the vendor coupon tender description in reports.
Store Coupon description	This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined store coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the store coupon tender description in reports.
Bonus Coupon description	This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined bonus coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the bonus coupon tender description in reports.

Parameter	Description
Triple Coupon description	This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined triple coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the triple coupon tender description in reports.

Signs Tab

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Receipt Printing, Signs, Bonus Buy" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog has five tabs: "General", "General 1", "Signs" (which is selected), "Bonus Buy", and "Signatures". The "Signs" tab contains the following settings:

Currency	\$	WIC sale	☐
Minus	-	DEA sale	☐
Decimal	.		
Format	,	Print currency on check (Dollar)	DOLLAR
Non taxable print character		Print currency on check (Cents)	CENTS
Multiple tax print character			
Food Stamp print character	F		
Non food stamp print character			
Cost Plus print character			
Non Cost Plus print character			
Frequent Shopper print character	*		
Non Frequent Shopper print character			

At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Currency	The currency sign to be used.
Minus	The minus sign to be used.

Parameter	Description
Decimal	The sign to be used for decimal quantity input (usually a point).
Format	The format sign to be used.
Non taxable print character	The sign to print on receipt and audit tape for non-taxable items (usually space).
Multiple tax print character	The sign to print on receipt and audit tape when two or more taxes are applicable.
Food Stamp print character	The character to be printed next to a food stamp eligible item.
Non food stamp print character	The character to be printed when a sale is not a food stamp item.
Cost Plus print character	The character to be printed next to Cost Plus item or department.
Non Cost Plus print character	The character to be printed when a sale is not a Cost Plus item or department.
Frequent Shopper print character	The character to be printed next to an item that has a Frequent Shopper discount.
Non Frequent Shopper print character	The character to be printed when a sale does not have a Frequent Shopper discount.
WIC sale	The character to print next to a WIC item.
DEA sale	The character to print next to items that are controlled by Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) laws.
Print currency on check (Dollar)	For Check printing, enter the text to print on the check. For example, 'Dollars'.
Print currency on check (Cents)	For Check printing, enter the text to print on the check. For example, 'Cents'.

Bonus Buy Tab

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Receipt Printing, Signs, Bonus Buy". It has five tabs: "General", "General 1", "Signs", "Bonus Buy" (which is selected), and "Signatures". The "Bonus Buy" tab contains a "PLU Comparison" section with a "Printing type" dropdown menu set to "Summary". Below this, there is instructional text: "Please create templates for line and summary printing. Line printing templates should be called BNSBUYLNnn. Summary printing templates should be called BNSBUYSMnn. The nn reflects comparison type, from 01 to 05". To the right of this section is a list of checkboxes for printing summary reports: "Print Summary report Header" (checked), "Print Summary report for type 1" (checked), "Print Summary report for type 2" (unchecked), "Print Summary report for type 3" (unchecked), "Print Summary report for type 4" (unchecked), "Print Summary report for type 5" (unchecked), "Print Summary report for Total" (unchecked), and "Print Summary report Footer" (checked). At the bottom of the dialog are "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply" buttons.

Parameter	Description
PLU Comparison area:	
Printing type	From the dropdown list, select the option for printing PLU Price Comparison items on the customer receipt:
Please create templates for line and summary printing	
Line printing templates should be called BNSBUYLNnn.	• None – No printing on the receipt • Summary – Print summary of PLU Price Comparison savings on the bottom of customer receipt. • Line – Print PLU Price Comparison savings per item on the customer receipt.
Summary printing templates should be called BNSBUYSMnn.	

Parameter	Description
The “nn” reflects comparison type, from 01 to 05	Summary & Line – Print PLU Price Comparison savings at item level and at the end of the order on the customer receipt.
Print Summary report Header	Select this checkbox to print a header on the PLU Price Comparison summary at the bottom of the customer receipt (for example, \$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$).
Print Summary report for type 1	Select this checkbox to print PLU Price Comparison Type 1 (e.g., Bonus Buy) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.
Print Summary report for type 2	Select this checkbox to print PLU Price Comparison Type 2 (e.g., Advertised Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.
Print Summary report for type 3	Select this checkbox to print PLU Price Comparison Type 3 (e.g., Matched Advertised Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.
Print Summary report for type 4	Select this checkbox to print PLU Price Comparison Type 4 (e.g., Private Label Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.
Print Summary report for type 5	Select this checkbox to print PLU Price Comparison Type 5 (e.g., Competitor Compare Label Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

Parameter	Description
Print Summary report for Total	Select this checkbox to print a Total Price Comparison Savings in the Summary Report.
Print Summary report Footer	Select this checkbox to print a footer on the Price Comparison summary on the bottom of the customer receipt (for example, \$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$).

Signatures Tab

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Receipt Printing, Signs, Bonus Buy" with a tabbed interface. The "Signatures" tab is selected. It contains the following settings:

- Suppress signature receipt on credit transactions:** A dropdown menu set to "Never".
- Minimum amount of printing signature receipt:** A text input field containing "0.00".
- Prompt the cashier for signature required:** A checked checkbox.

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Suppress signature receipt on credit transactions	This parameter provides the option of suppressing the printing of the credit card signature slip for selected customers. Options are 'Never', 'Member' (member card holders) or 'Always' (all customers). This feature requires buffer printing.
Minimum amount of printing signature receipt	This parameter provides the option of suppressing the printing of the credit card signature slip when the credit card value is below a minimum dollar amount (range 0.00 to 999999999.99).
Prompt the cashier for signature required	Select this parameter to prompt the cashier for customer signature on credit card transactions when the slip is not suppressed.

POS Keyboards

The POS Keyboard option enables you to design and customize the keyboards of the POS terminals. You can set up different keyboard layouts and then map functions to specific keys.

Keyboard Functions

The Keyboard Functions option lists all functions available for use on a POS terminal, and allows you to change a function name or add new functions. All necessary functions are included with the installation of Office, and should not be touched. Although you are able to change the function descriptions, the functions themselves remain unaffected.

New functions may be included in program upgrades received from time to time.

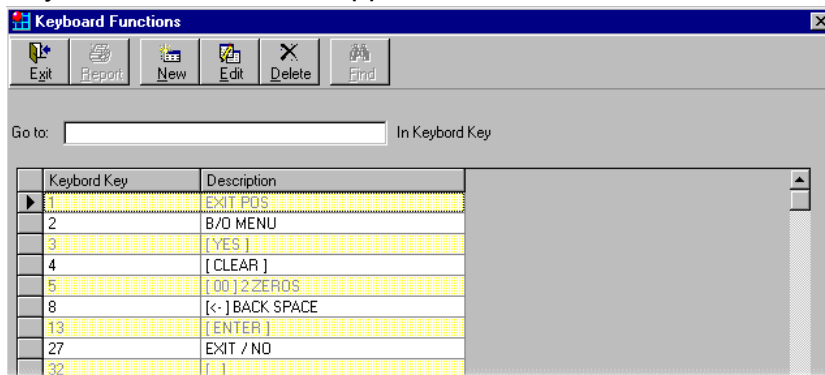
Dealers and technical support personnel may also add custom designed functions via *custom links*. These are mini applications, which can be activated at the POS terminal.

Keyboard Function Assignments

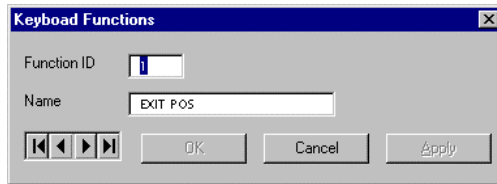
Number	Assignment
1 - 90	Alphanumeric keyboard keys.
327 - 337	Navigation keys.
700 - 799	Reserved for customer hook functions (custom links). Use this range of functions if you develop custom links.
701 - 799	Not used.
800 - 899	These are idle mode and sale mode functions, for POS closed and POS open states.
900 - 999	Used for POS functions in sale mode only, POS open state.
1000 - 1099	User-defined.

➤ **To add a new keyboard function**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Keyboards and then Keyboard Functions. The Keyboard Functions list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The Keyboard Functions dialog box appears.



- 3 Enter the *Function ID* and *Name*.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

3

Front Office Configuration

The System Maintenance & Utilities option provides access to the system parameters, to various maintenance programs and to StoreLine/ISS45 utilities.

In this chapter:

Front Office Parameters,
page 3-3

Store Parameters,
page 3-3

Cash Office Parameters,
page 3-4

PLU and Batch Parameters, page 3-13

End of Day Parameters,
page 3-23

End of Day Report Parameters, page 3-33

Report Parameters,
page 3-36

PCs in System,
page 3-41

HOST PC Parameters,
page 3-44

Printer Parameters,
page 3-45

Data Tracking,
page 3-46

CDV Schemes,
page 3-47

Front Office Parameters

The parameters in this section enable you to customize and set up the behavior and functionality of the various Office options.

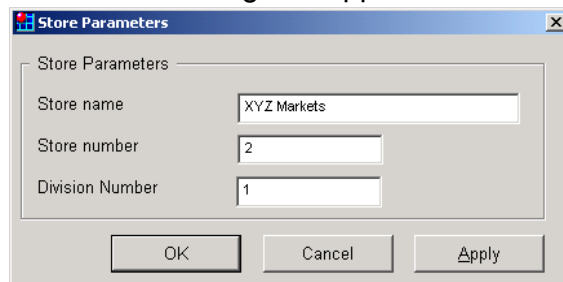
Most of the parameters in this section need to be set up at the initial customization of the system.

Store Parameters

This option contains some of the basic details of your store.

➤ **To define Store Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then Store Parameters. The Store Parameters dialog box appears.



- 2 Enter the *Store Name* (up to 28 characters). This name displays on all screens and reports.
- 3 Enter the *Store Number* (range 0 to 60000) and *Division Number* (up to 4 digits).

- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Cash Office Parameters

Use these parameters and options to set up the functionality of the Cash Office.

The Cash Office Parameters dialog box contains three tabs:

- Basic Setup
- Locking Options
- Print Options

➤ **To define Cash Office Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then Cash Office Parameters. The Cash Office tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Basic Setup Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Cash Office Parameters' dialog box with the 'Basic Setup' tab selected. The 'General' section contains several checkboxes, with 'Allow delayed cashier/POST balancing' checked. The 'Do Not Transfer Period On' section contains checkboxes for days of the week, all of which are unchecked. The 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons are at the bottom right.

Parameter	Description
☒ Allow delayed cashier/POST balancing	With Delayed Cashier Balancing feature, the system allows cashiers who work different shifts on different days, to simultaneously retain the totals for both shifts (previous and current), and perform cashier balancing at the end of the second shift. For further details, see <i>Transfer Current Data to Previous Period</i> , in Chapter 3, <i>Cash Office</i> in the <i>StoreLine/ISS45 Office User's Guide</i> .
☐ Transfer period on End-Of-Week (default is every day)	
☐ POS Accountability in system	
☒ Allow transactions (pickups/loans) after cashiers/POSTs locked	
☒ Allow declarations for cashiers/POSTs not signed-on in period	
☒ Allow cashier/Post declarations in current period while signed on	
☒ Update safe totals immediately after cashier/POST declaration	
☐ Allow manual editing of tenders marks as 'Auto declaration'	
☒ Update Cashiers/POSs declaration values for 'Auto declaration' tenders during End Of Day	
☐ Automatic Pickup/Loan of over/short amount to signed-on cashiers during End-Of-Day	
☐ Do not show Over/Short tab at Cashier / POS Declaration	

Do Not Transfer Period On

☐ Monday
☐ Tuesday
☐ Wednesday
☐ Thursday
☐ Friday
☐ Saturday
☐ Sunday

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Allow delayed cashier/POST balancing	With Delayed Cashier Balancing feature, the system allows cashiers who work different shifts on different days, to simultaneously retain the totals for both shifts (previous and current), and perform cashier balancing at the end of the second shift. For further details, see <i>Transfer Current Data to Previous Period</i> , in Chapter 3, <i>Cash Office</i> in the <i>StoreLine/ISS45 Office User's Guide</i> .

Select this parameter to enable the Delayed

Parameter	Description
	Cashier Balancing feature. A cashier will be able to work a current shift before the previous shift's data has been processed or cleared.
Transfer period on End-of-Week (default is every day)	If the store's trading period is a week, select this parameter to transfer cashier totals to the previous period at the end of the week. For example, if a store trades to Sunday, the transfer will be done during the End of Week (EOW) on Sunday night. The system default is to transfer totals at every End of Day (EOD).
POS Accountability is system	Select this parameter to set the system to operate on POS Accountability, rather than cashier accountability. If you select or clear this option once the store has already started operating, then cashier/POS statistics could be damaged.
Allow transactions (pickup/loans) after cashiers/POSTs locked	If selected, you will be able to do corrections to pickups and loans after locking has been done.
Allow declarations for cashiers/POSTs not signed-on in period	If selected, you will be able to declare money for cashiers/POSTs NOT signed-on in a specific period.
Allow cashiers/POST declarations in current period while signed on	Usually, declarations are performed once cashiers have signed off. To allow declarations anytime, select this option.
Update safe totals immediately after cashier/POST declaration	Select this option if you want the in-safe totals in the system to be updated after every cashier or POS declaration performed.

Parameter	Description
Allow manual editing of tenders marked as "Auto declaration"	Select this option if you want the system to allow manual editing of tenders marked as 'Auto declaration'.
Update Cashier/POSTs declaration values for "Auto declaration" tenders during End-of-Day	Select this option if you want the system to update Cashier/POSTs declaration values for 'Auto declaration' tenders during the End-of-Day.
Automatic Pickup/Loan of over/short amount to signed-on cashiers during End-of-Day	Select this option if you want an automatic Pickup/Loan of Over/Short amounts to be performed during EOD.
Do no show Over/Short tab at Cashier/POST Declaration	Select this option if you do not want to show the Over/Short tab at Cashier/POS Declaration.
Do Not Transfer Period On (Monday through Sunday)	If the system is set to transfer totals on a daily basis, these parameters may optionally be set to prohibit the transfer on a specific day. More than one day may be selected.

Locking Options Tab

Cash Office Parameters

Basic Setup | **Locking Options** | Print Option

Cashier/POS General

- ☒ Perform locking on all cashiers/POSTs
- ☐ Print reports for all cashiers/POSTs, active and non active
- ☒ Ask "Zero Cashier Yes/No" after each cashier
- ☒ Automatic locking during End Of Day
- ☐ Automatic locking for cashier at POS accountability system
- Maximum over/short percentage to allow locking:

Reports to Print at Locking

- ☒ Cashier/POS report
- ☒ Cashier/POS Declaration report
- ☐ Operator/POS Trial Balance report
- ☐ Cashier/POS Accountability report
- ☐ Operator/POS Summary Balance report
- ☐ Pickup & Loan Report
- ☐ Cashier Cash Report

Safe Locking General

- ☐ Do not allow locking if unlocked cashiers found

Copies to Print at Safe Locking

- Safe report:
- Weekly Paid-outs report:
- Weekly ROA report:

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Cashier/POS General area:	
Perform locking on all cashiers/POSTs	Select this parameter to lock all cashiers/POSTs simultaneously (usually used in stores where there are a large number of Cashiers/POS terminals). If selected, you cannot select individual cashiers to lock.
Print reports for all cashiers/POSTs, active and non-active	Select this parameter to print reports for ALL cashiers and POS terminals rather than the default of printing only those that were active during the trading period.

Parameter	Description
Ask "Zero Cashier Yes/No" after each cashier	Select this parameter if you want to provide the Cash Office operator with the option of whether or not to proceed with Locking, by using the Yes/No option. The prompt appears after the reports are printed.
Automatic locking during End-of-Day	Select this parameter to automatically 'lock' all Cashiers/POS terminals at End of Day.
Automatic locking for cashier at POS accountability system	If this option is selected and your system uses POS accountability, cashiers are automatically locked at the End of Day, allowing the clearing of cashier totals.
Maximum over/short percentage to allow locking	To keep control of cashier locking, specify an over or short percentage. When a cashier or POS exceeds the percentage, the system will not allow locking.
Safe Locking General area:	
Do not allow locking if unlocked cashiers found	If this option is selected, safe locking cannot be done until all cashiers are balanced and locked.
Reports to Print at Locking area:	
Cashier/POS report	Select this parameter to automatically print a Cashier/POS Report after performing a Cashier/POS Locking.
Cashier/POS Declaration report	Select this parameter to automatically print a Cashier/POS Declaration Report after performing a Cashier/POS Locking.
Operator/POS Trial Balance report	Select this parameter to automatically print a Cashier/POS Trial Balance Report after performing a Cashier/POS Locking.

Parameter	Description
Cashier/POS Accountability report	Select this parameter to automatically print a Cashier/POS Accountability Report after performing a Cashier/POS Locking.
Operator/POS Summary Balance report	Select this parameter to automatically print a Cashier/POS Summary Balance Report after performing a Cashier/POS Locking.
Pick & Loan Report	Select this parameter to automatically print a Pickup Report after performing a Cashier/POS Locking.
Cashier/POS Cash (Tender) Report	Select this parameter to automatically print a Cashier/POS Cash (Tender) Report after performing a Cashier/POS Locking.
Copies to Print at Safe Locking area:	
Safe report	Specify the number of copies of the Safe Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.
Weekly Paid-outs report	Specify the number of copies of the Weekly Paid-outs Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.
Weekly ROA report	Specify the number of copies of the Weekly ROA Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

Print Option Tab

These options and parameters relate to Cash Office report printing. For each of the following Cash Office functions, the following print options exist:

- Ask Yes/No – Prompts whether or not to print

- Print – Automatically prints after the relevant transaction
- No Print – Will not print reports and will not prompt

Cash Office Parameters

Basic Setup | Locking Options | **Print Option**

Print Option:

Cashier/POS Add Loan:	Ask Yes/No
Cashier/POS Pickup:	Ask Yes/No
Cashier/POS Declare:	Print
Safe Deposit:	Ask Yes/No
Safe Receipt:	Ask Yes/No
Safe Payout:	Ask Yes/No
Safe ROA:	Ask Yes/No
Safe Declaration:	Ask Yes/No

OK Cancel Apply

Parameter	Description
Print Option area:	For each of the following Cash Office functions, select the appropriate options for printing reports. Options include 'Ask Yes/No', Print (always) or no print.

Parameter	Description
Cashier/POS Add Loan	Select the following print option, when performing a Cashier/POS Loan.
Cashier/POS Pickup	Select the following print option, when performing a Cashier/POS Pickup.
Cashier/POS Declare	Select the following print option, when performing a Cashier/POS Declaration.
Safe Deposit	Select the following print option, when performing a Safe Deposit.
Safe Receipt	Select the following print option, when performing a Safe Receipt.
Safe Payout	Select the following print option, when performing a Safe Payout.
Safe ROA	Select the following print option, when performing a Safe Received on Account (ROA).
Safe Declaration	Select the following print option, when performing a Safe Declaration.

PLU and Batch Parameters

These parameters let you set up and change PLU and Batch functionality.

➤ **To set up PLU and Batch Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then PLU and Batch Parameters. The PLU and Batch Parameters tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

PLU Options Tab

The screenshot shows the 'PLU And Batch Parameters' dialog box with the 'PLU Options' tab selected. The dialog has four tabs: 'PLU Options', 'Batch Options', 'Maintenance options', and 'Automatic Updating'. The 'PLU Options' tab contains two main sections: 'Validations' and 'Set "Discount Prohibit" On If...'. The 'Validations' section has a list of checkboxes: 'PLU must have a valid check digit' (unchecked), 'Zero price PLU allowed' (checked), 'Set "Manual price" on if item price is 0' (checked), 'Internal code in system' (checked), 'Internal code must have a valid check digit' (unchecked), 'PLU must be linked to sub-department' (unchecked), 'Subdepartment in the system' (checked), 'Prohibit manual changes to Negative Entry flag' (checked), and 'Allow to delete Central Item' (unchecked). The 'Set "Discount Prohibit" On If...' section has a list of checkboxes: 'Item is on Sale' (checked), 'Item is on Promotion' (checked), 'Item is on Reduction' (checked), and 'Item is on Offer' (checked). Below these sections is an 'Auditing' section with a label 'Audit Type' and a dropdown menu showing 'Header Audit'. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Section	Option	Status
Validations	PLU must have a valid check digit	Unchecked
	Zero price PLU allowed	Checked
	Set "Manual price" on if item price is 0	Checked
	Internal code in system	Checked
	Internal code must have a valid check digit	Unchecked
	PLU must be linked to sub-department	Unchecked
	Subdepartment in the system	Checked
	Prohibit manual changes to Negative Entry flag	Checked
	Allow to delete Central Item	Unchecked
Set "Discount Prohibit" On If...	Item is on Sale	Checked
	Item is on Promotion	Checked
	Item is on Reduction	Checked
	Item is on Offer	Checked
Auditing	Audit Type	Header Audit

Parameter	Description
Validation area:	
PLU must have a valid check digit	Select this parameter if PLU numbers must have a valid check digit.
Zero price PLU allowed	Select this parameter for PLU Maintenance to allow zero-priced items. UPC2 items (for example, pre-packaged meat) are allowed to be zero-priced regardless of the parameter.
Set "Manual price" on if item is 0	If the option 'Zero price PLU allowed' is selected, then use this option to allow cashiers to manually enter a price. The cashier will be prompted to enter the item's price when a zero-priced item is scanned or key-entered.
Internal code in system	If your store uses an internal code (item number), select this parameter. Internal codes are linked to the PLU number. Users can link multiple PLU items to the same internal code. For example, different flavors of Jello can be linked to the same internal code. If this parameter is selected, any type of maintenance to existing items will require the internal code number to be added to the PLU record.
Internal code must have a valid check digit	Select this parameter to validate a check digit on Internal Code numbers.
PLU must be linked to sub-department	If 'Subdepartment in the system' is selected, this parameter specifies that PLU items must be linked to a Subdepartment, as well as a department.

Parameter	Description
Subdepartment in the system	Specifies that Subdepartments are enabled in the system.
Prohibit manual changes to Negative Entry flag	When this option is selected, the Negative Entry parameter in PLU Maintenance will be disabled. Note: If the parameter Negative Entry is checked, you may not set a coupon flag (store, bonus, or vendor). The system displays an error message 'Not allowed, negative entry flag set'. If a coupon flag is check, you may not set the negative entry parameter. The system displays an error message 'Not allowed, coupon flag set'.
Allow to delete Central Item	This parameter is currently not supported.
Set "Discount Prohibit" On If area:	
Item is on Sale	If this option is selected, you cannot link discounts to items that have the 'Item is on Sale' flag set in PLU Maintenance.
Item is on Promotion	If this option is selected, you cannot link discounts to items that are on promotion.
Item is on Reduction	If this option is selected, you cannot link discounts to items that are on reduction.
Item is on Offer	If this option is selected, you cannot link discounts to items that have offers associated with it.

Parameter	Description
Auditing Type	This option tracks and logs changes made to PLU details. • No Audit • Full Audit – all details logged • Header Audit – only basic details logged

Batch Options Tab

The screenshot shows a window titled "PLU And Batch Parameters" with a tabbed interface. The "Batch Options" tab is active. Inside this tab, there is a group box labeled "Batch Opcodes". Within this group box, there are three checked checkboxes: "Use opcode #1 (new) as INSERT/UPDATE code (Host files)", "Use opcode #2 (update) as INSERT/UPDATE code (Host files)", and an unchecked checkbox "Automatic Execute - Full Item Load". At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Batch Opcodes area:	
Use Opcode #1 (new) as INSERT/UPDATE code (Host files)	This parameter refers to the Batch Code field in the Host Batch file. If this parameter is selected, when processing a record with Code #1 (New) in a batch file, the system will insert this record as a new PLU, or update an existing PLU if the PLU number exists. If this option is not selected, and the PLU exists, an error message will be generated.

Parameter	Description
Use Opcode #2 (update) as INSERT/UPDATE code (Host files)	This parameter refers to the Batch Code field in the Host Batch. If this parameter is selected, when processing a record with Code #2 (Update) in a batch file, the system will insert as a new PLU if the item does not exist, or update an existing PLU if the PLU number exists. If this option is not selected, and the PLU does not exist, an error message will be generated.
Automatic Execute – Full Item Load	This parameter refers to loading a full item file. If this parameter is checked, a full item load executes automatically. If this parameter is left blank, the item file load must be executed manually.

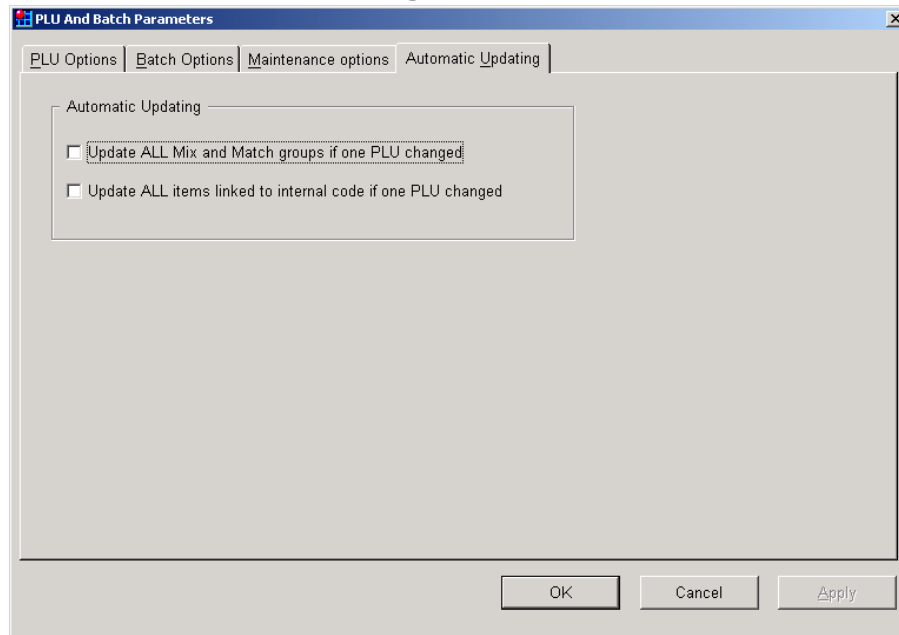
Maintenance Options Tab

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "PLU And Batch Parameters" with four tabs: "PLU Options", "Batch Options", "Maintenance options", and "Automatic Updating". The "Maintenance options" tab is selected. Inside the tab, there is a group box labeled "Maintenance" containing two checkboxes: "Erase criteria when returning from PLU form to PLU grid" (unchecked) and "PLU follow department flags as default" (checked). Below the group box is another checkbox labeled "Do not prompt for filter" (unchecked). At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
Erase criteria when returning from PLU form to PLU grid	After inserting a new PLU, any PLUs previously loaded into the PLU by the filter option will be cleared. Only the new PLU will appear in the list.
PLU follow department flags as default	When adding a new PLU, the default flags of the department record will automatically be assigned to the new item (see <i>Chapter 1, PLU Management</i> , in the <i>StoreLine/ISS45 Office User's Guide</i>).

Parameter	Description
Do not prompt for filter	In PLU Maintenance, the filter utility (PLU Item Selector) allows you to search and find PLU items based on selected item criteria (e.g., department number or mix & match code), for quick and easy access to ranges of PLU items for file maintenance. If this parameter is selected, the PLU Item Selector option is not available in PLU Maintenance.

Automatic Updating



Parameter	Description
Update All Mix and Match groups if one PLU Changed	PLU items can be assigned to a Mix and Match Group so that prices can be updated globally by changing the price of a single item in a group. By assigning a Mix and Match code to an item, you can change the price and quantity of all items that are associated to this Mix and Match code. In other words, if you change the price or quantity of an item, you can change ALL items with the same code.

For more information, see *Chapter 1, PLU*

Parameter	Description
	<i>Management</i> , in the <i>Office User's Guide</i> .
	If this parameter is not selected, each price must be individually changed.
Update all items linked to internal code if one PLU changed	Similar to Mix and Match.

End of Day Parameters

The End of Day Parameters enables you to set up various options relating to the End of Day process.

End of Day System Parameters

- **To set up End of Day System Parameters**
- 1** From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, End of Day Parameters and then End of Day System Parameters. The End of Day System Parameters tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2** On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3** Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

General Tab

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "End Of Day Parameters". It has three tabs: "Period Parameters", "History Parameters", and "General", with "General" being the active tab. The dialog contains several settings:

- ☐ 24 Hours store
- ☐ Automatic End of Day
 - Disallow automatic End Of Day between -
- ☒ Allow changing of trading date, next trading date, EOD type
- ☐ Pause EOD at the end of critical part
- Warning message if declarations not done:
- Warning message if saved tickets found:
- Compare SQL to QDX during EOD:

At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: "Calendar", "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description

24 Hours store	Specifies that the specific store is open 24 hours.

Parameter	Description
Automatic End of Day	Select this option if you want End of Day (EOD) to run automatically. Note: If converting an existing <i>StoreLine/ISS45</i> system to Automatic EOD, an additional manual End-of-Day must be performed after this Automatic End of Day parameter has been set. In addition, Windows 2000 Service SQL Server Agent must be set up to run automatically.
Disallow automatic End of Day between “X” and “Y”.	Specify the times between which you do not want to run automatic EOD. Use the 24-hour time format.
Allow changing of trading date, next trading date, EOD type	Select this parameter to allow authorized users to change trading date, next trading date and EOD type.
Pause EOD at the end of critical part	If this option is selected, you will have to press <i>Continue</i> once the critical part of EOD has completed. This allows users to monitor EOD through the critical part.
Warning message if declarations not done	Use this option so that during EOD, a warning message will prompt you when declarations have not been done. Parameter options are: • None • Warning Only • Error: Stop End of Day

Parameter	Description
Warning message if saved tickets found	Use this option so that during EOD, a warning message will prompt you when saved tickets (suspended sales transactions) are found. Parameter options are: • None • Warning Only • Error: Stop End of Day
Compare SQL to QDX during EOD	Use this option during EOD to check for errors in the databases. Options: • None – no checking. • Check Only – compares QDX tables with SQL tables and reports differences. • Full – compares the tables and rebuilds the QDX tables if differences are found.

Period Parameters Tab

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "End Of Day Parameters" with three tabs: "Period Parameters", "History Parameters", and "General". The "Period Parameters" tab is active. It contains the following controls:

- End of Week:** A group box containing a label "Perform on:" and a dropdown menu currently set to "Saturday".
- End of Year:** A group box containing a label "Month:" with a dropdown menu set to "December", and a label "Day:" with a text box containing "29".
- End of Month:** A group box containing a 2x6 grid of text boxes for each month, showing the day of the month to process totals:

Month	Day
January:	26
February:	23
March:	30
April:	27
May:	25
June:	29
July:	27
August:	24
September:	28
October:	26
November:	24
December:	29

At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: "Calendar", "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Parameter	Description
End of Week (perform on)	Select the appropriate day to perform the End of Week procedure. Default is Sunday.
End of Year (month/day)	Select the appropriate month and day to process End of Year totals.
End of Month	This multi-parameter specifies the day of each month on which End of Month totals will be processed. The default day is the last calendar date of each month.

History Parameters Tab

The screenshot shows the 'End Of Day Parameters' dialog box with the 'History Parameters' tab selected. The 'Period in Archive' section contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Value	Description	Value
PLU Daily History:	370	Number of Cash Office Shifts:	750
PLU Weekly History:	105	Number of Days for all others Sales Tables:	370
PLU Monthly History:	36	Number of Days for user Access Log:	370
PLU Yearly History:	5	Number of Days for PLU Batch - Execute:	370
Electronic Journal:	370	Number of Days for PLU Batch - Error:	370
		Number of Days for Report Archive:	750

At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Calendar', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Parameter

Description

- Period in Archive area:
- Enter the required number of periods to store in the Archive. For example, in PLU Daily History, a value of 370 = 370 days; PLU Weekly History, a value of 105 = 105 weeks; and PLU Monthly History, a value of 36 = 36 months.
- PLU Daily History (stored in SQL tables)
 - PLU Weekly History (stored in SQL tables)
 - PLU Monthly History (stored in SQL tables)
 - PLU Yearly History (stored in SQL tables)

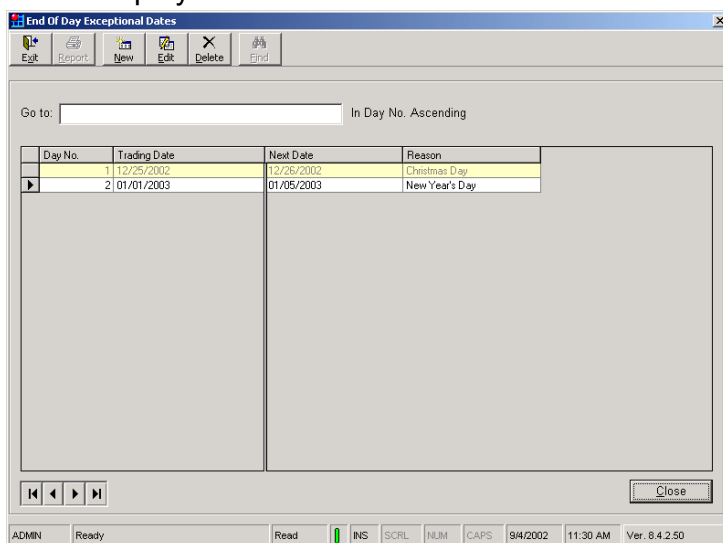
Parameter	Description
	• Electronic Journal • Number of Cash Office Shifts • Number of Days for all Other Sales Tables (stored in SQL tables) • Number of Days for User Access Log • Number of Days for PLU Batch – Execute • Number of Days for PLU Batch – Error • Number of Days for Report Archive

End of Day Exceptional Dates

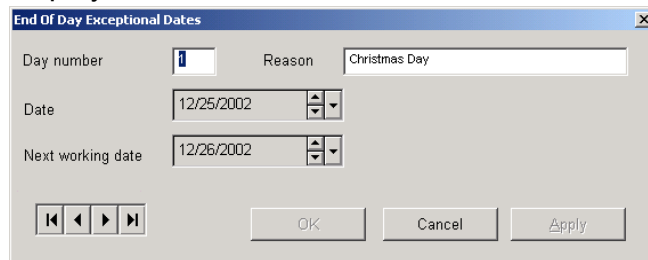
End of Day Exceptional Dates enables you to define which 'special' future dates you would like to run End of Day on.

➤ **To define exceptional dates**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, End of Day Parameters and then End of Day Exceptional Dates. The End of Day Exceptional Dates dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Double-click on the required Day number, or highlight it and select *Edit*. The End Of Day Exceptional Dates dialog box is displayed.

The image shows a dialog box titled "End Of Day Exceptional Dates". It contains four input fields: "Day number" with a value of 1, "Reason" with the text "Christmas Day", "Date" with the date "12/25/2002", and "Next working date" with the date "12/26/2002". Each date field has up and down arrow buttons. At the bottom left are four small navigation buttons (back, forward, etc.). At the bottom right are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

- 3 Set the properties and options as required.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

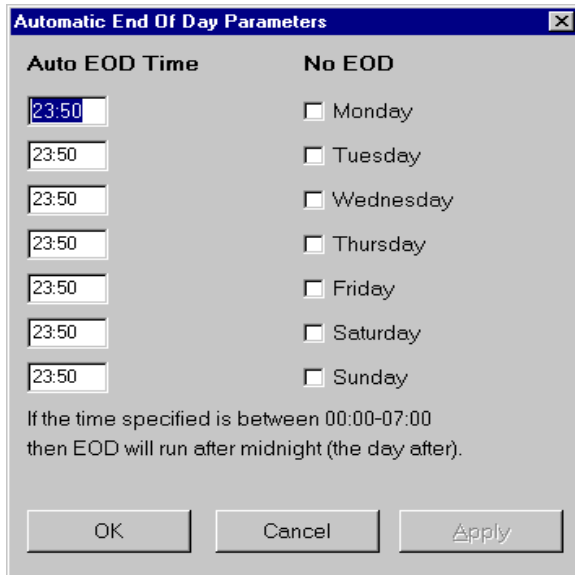
Parameter	Description
Day number	Enter the appropriate day (1 to 7) on which EOD must be run.
Date	Specify the appropriate date on which to run EOD.
Next working date	Specify the next working date.
Reason	Enter a short description explaining why the date is an 'Exceptional Date'. For Example: Leap Year or New Year.

Automatic End Of Day Parameters

Use the Automatic End Of Day Parameters to specify the days and times to run automatic end of day.

➤ **To set automatic end of day**

- 1 From the System Administration Menu, select Front Office Parameters, End of Day Parameters, and then Automatic of Day Parameters. The Automatic End Of Day Parameters dialog box is displayed.



The dialog box titled "Automatic End Of Day Parameters" contains two columns. The left column, "Auto EOD Time", has seven text boxes, each containing "23:50". The right column, "No EOD", has seven checkboxes corresponding to the days of the week: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, and Sunday. All checkboxes are currently unchecked. Below these columns is a note: "If the time specified is between 00:00-07:00 then EOD will run after midnight (the day after)." At the bottom are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

Auto EOD Time	No EOD
23:50	☐ Monday
23:50	☐ Tuesday
23:50	☐ Wednesday
23:50	☐ Thursday
23:50	☐ Friday
23:50	☐ Saturday
23:50	☐ Sunday

If the time specified is between 00:00-07:00 then EOD will run after midnight (the day after).

OK Cancel Apply

- 2 Enter the specific Automatic EOD Times.
- 3 Specify which day(s) of the week you do not want to run automatic end of day.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

End of Day Report Parameters

All data that is accumulated in the store during the course of a day is saved in a database. Parameters are defined to retrieve the required information and generate reports.

This module deals specifically with defining the reports that are generated as part of the End of Day process. The reports that are generated are also added to the print history, which enables you to retrieve daily reports at a later stage from the *Reports* menu.

For further information about reports, refer to the *Reports Reference*.

Using the procedures described below, you are able to specify for which parts of the daily process reports are to be generated.

➤ **To specify parameters for End of Day reports**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, and then End of Day Reports Parameters. The End of Day Reports Parameters dialog box is displayed.

Category: (All)

Go to: In Report Name

Reports List

Report Name	Generate at EOD	Add to print history	Print during EOD
Basket Analysis month-to-date (on	☐	☐	☐
Branch Expenses Summary Report	☐	☐	☐
Branch Performance Report	☐	☐	☐
Cashier Coupons	☒	☒	☐
Cashier Effectiveness	☒	☒	☐
Cashier History Sign On Report	☐	☐	☐
Cashier Performance Daily	☒	☒	☐
Cashier Performance Monthly	☒	☒	☐
Cashier Performance Profile	☒	☒	☐
Cashier Performance Weekly	☒	☒	☐
Cashier Pickup & Loan Report	☐	☐	☐
Cashier Returns / Refunds Summary	☒	☒	☐
Cashier Sales / Items	☒	☒	☐
Cashier Scan	☒	☒	☐

Clear Generate Clear Add Clear Print Close

- 2 Select the report category from the *Category* dropdown list. The *Report Name* field in the *Reports List* area displays the list of all available reports for the selected category.
- 3 Type the start of a report name in the *Go to* field to select a specific report,

Or

Scroll down the *Report Name* list in order to select the required report.

- 4 For each report, select or clear the checkboxes, described on the following page, to determine how they will be included in

the EOD process. If *Generate at EOD* is not selected, the report will not be generated.

Note:

Add to Print History and *Print during EOD* can only be selected if *Generate at EOD* has first been selected.

Parameter	Description
Generate at EOD	The report will be automatically generated as part of the EOD process.
Add to print history	The report will automatically be added to the print history archive.
Print during EOD	The report will be automatically printed as part of the EOD process.

- 5 Click *Close* to exit the dialog box.

Report Parameters

These parameters affect various productivity and performance reports.

➤ **To define Report Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, and then Report Parameters. The Report Parameters tabbed dialog box appears.
- 2 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Productivity and Performance Tab

The screenshot shows a 'Report Parameters' dialog box with the 'Productivity and Performance' tab selected. The 'Maximum idle time multiplier' is set to 8, and the 'Express orders size (number of items)' is set to 10. The 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons are visible at the bottom.

Parameter	Description
Maximum idle time multiplier	Not applicable.
Express order size (number of items)	Specifies the size of Express Orders (number of items) for productivity and performance reporting. The range of Express Order size is 0 to 99.

Customer and Item Count Tab

Report Parameters

Productivity and Performance | **Customer and Item Count** | Itemized Check Report | VAT Reporting

☐ Bottle deposits and refunds don't affect item count statistics

☐ Non merchandise items don't affect item count statistics

☒ Orders with ONLY bottle deposits/refunds or non merchandise departments don't affect customer count.

☒ Orders with only coupons don't affect customer count.

OK Cancel Apply

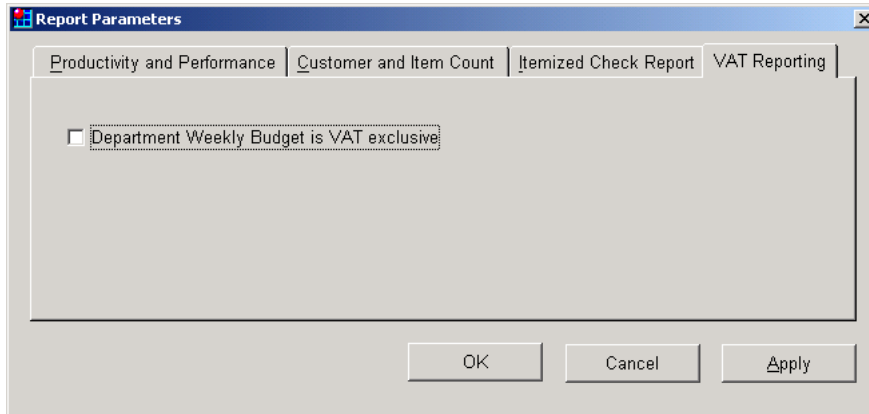
Parameter	Description
Bottle deposits and refunds don't affect item count statistics	Select this parameter to not include bottle deposits and refunds in item count statistics.
Non-merchandise items don't affect item count statistics	Select this parameter to not include non-merchandise items in item count statistics.
Orders with ONLY bottle deposits/refunds or non-merchandise departments do not affect customer count.	Select this parameter to not include 'Bottle Deposits/Refunds' and 'Non-merchandise' ONLY orders in customer count.
Orders with only coupons don't affect customer count	Select this parameter to not include Coupon ONLY orders in customer count.

Itemized Check Report Tab

Parameter	Description
Check total by group	The Itemized Check Report by Cashier/POS prints details of payments received by check, on a check-by-check basis. This parameter allows you to print a Check Batch Total after every 'X' number of checks on the report. If this parameter is left blank, the report will list checks sequentially for each Cashier/POS, with a report total at the end of all the checks (per Cashier/POS). If this parameter is selected, in addition to the above totals, you will get a Check Batch Total, every 'X' checks and then a Final Batch Total at the end, for the last 'Y' number of checks.
Group 1: Number of checks in total	Specify the number of checks ('X') for the Check Batch Totals on the Itemized Check Report.

Parameter	Description
Group 2: Number of checks in total	Specify the number of checks ('Y') for the Final Batch Total on the Itemized Check Report.

VAT Reporting Tab



Parameter	Description
Department Weekly Budget is VAT (Value Added Tax) exclusive	The Department Weekly Budget Report displays forecasted sales, actual sales, and percent to budget. Select this parameter to exclude VAT taxes from department sales on this report.

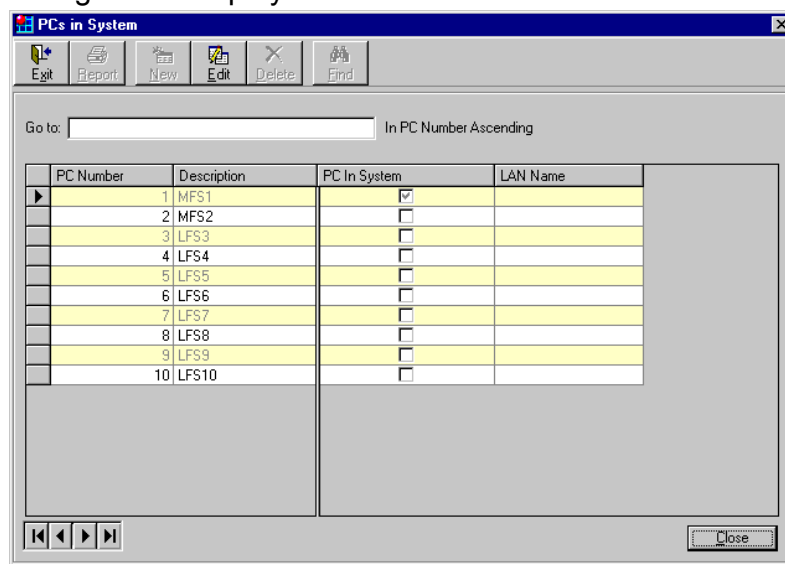
Note: The United States currently does not use the VAT method for taxing products.

PCs in System

The PCs in System dialog box enables you to define which PCs are operating in the store system. The system allows up to two servers and ten PCs to be connected.

➤ **To define the PCs (workstations) in the system**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, and then PCs in System. The PCs in System dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select the *PC in System* checkboxes that relate to the PCs that are in the store system. *MFS1* and *MSF2* are servers. Computers with the prefix *LFS* are the computers (workstations) in the system which are not servers.

Note:

Clearing the *PC In System* checkbox will disconnect the PC from the store system.

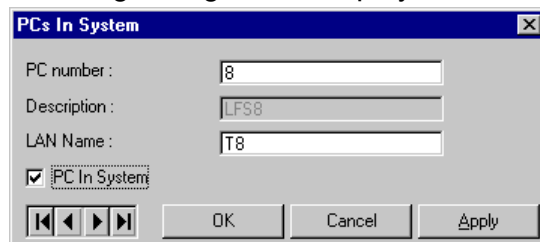
- 3 Click *Close* to exit the dialog box.

Adding a New PC to the System

PCs can be added to the system through the PCs in System window, described on the previous page.

➤ **To add a new PC to the system**

- 1 In the PCs in System window click the *New* button. The following dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Enter the identifying information for the PC in the *PC number*, *Description* and *LAN Name* fields.
- 3 Select the *PC in System* checkbox to enable the PC as part of the store system.

Note:

Clearing the *PC In System* checkbox will disconnect the PC from the store system.

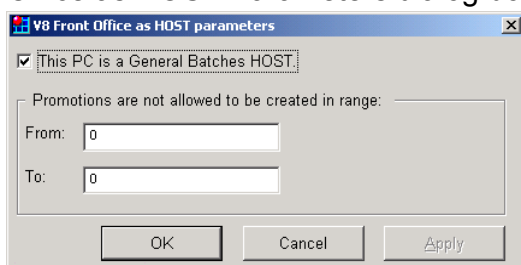
- 4 Click *OK*.

HOST PC Parameters

Use these parameters to allow the system to create in-store general batches for promotions, which can be exported to other stores.

➤ **To define HOST PC parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then HOST PC Parameters. The V8 Front Office as HOST Parameters dialog box is displayed.



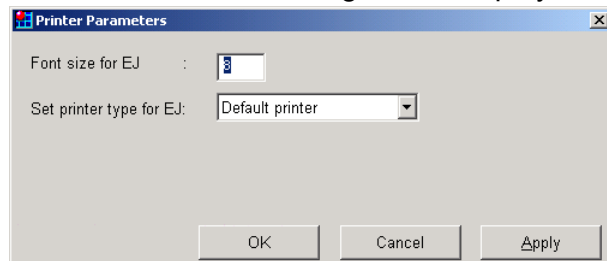
- 2 Select *This PC is a General Batches HOST* to enable the system to allow creating general promotion batches, which can be distributed to other stores within the chain.
- 3 Specify the range of promotion numbers reserved for Host in the *From:* and *To:* fields. To prevent creating promotions with duplicate numbers, in-store promotions cannot be created within this range.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Printer Parameters

Use these parameters to set up the functionality of the Electronic Journal printer.

➤ **To define Printer Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then Printer Parameters. The following Printer Parameters dialog box is displayed.



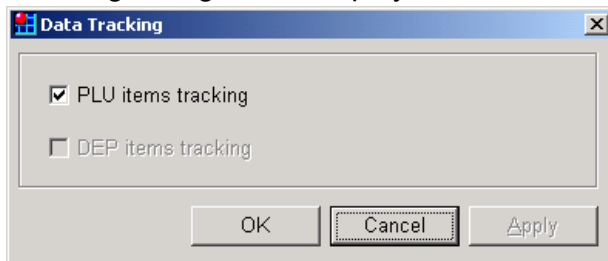
- 2 Enter the font size for the Electronic Journal. The font size range is from 4 to 15.
- 3 Select the printer type for the Electronic Journal. The choices are either *Default Printer* or *Second Printer*.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Data Tracking

These parameters allow you to track PLU items when they are updated or modified.

➤ **To select Data Tracking Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then Data Tracking. The following Data Tracking dialog box is displayed.



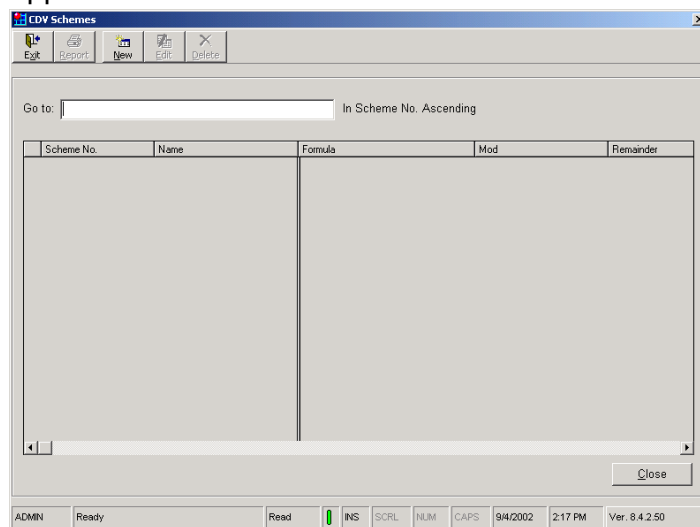
- 2 Select *PLU items tracking* to track items when they are updated or modified.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

CDV Schemes

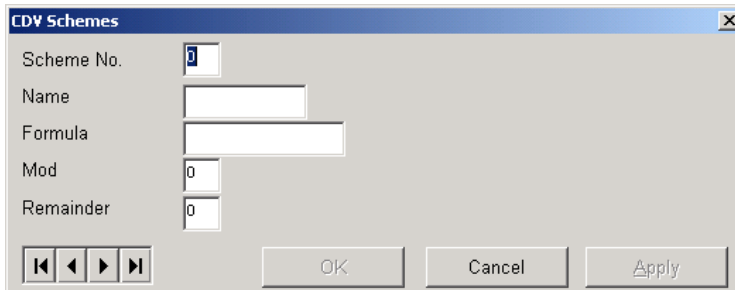
The CDV Schemes dialog box enables you to customize Check Digit Validation Schemes for store operations. The system allows up to 10 user-defined CDV schemes.

➤ **To define CDV Schemes**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then CDV Schemes. The CDV Schemes list appears.



- 2 Double-click the required scheme number to edit an existing scheme or click *New* to add a new scheme. The CDV Schemes dialog box is displayed.



- 3 Set the properties as required.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
Scheme No.	Enter the CDV Scheme number (1-10).
Name	Enter a short description, up to 8 characters.
Formula	Specify the formula, a series of 1-13 digits, representing the means by which the CDV is calculated (for example, formula 8421).
Mod	Specify the Module, the value to divide the result by.
Remainder	Specify the remainder.

4

Preferences

Use the Customize option to change various parts of the system's appearance to suit your liking.

In this chapter:

**Customizing
Application, page 4-3**

**Changing System
Colors, page 4-3**

Customizing Application

This option allows you to change some of the system's colors and set up toolbar options.

Changing System Colors

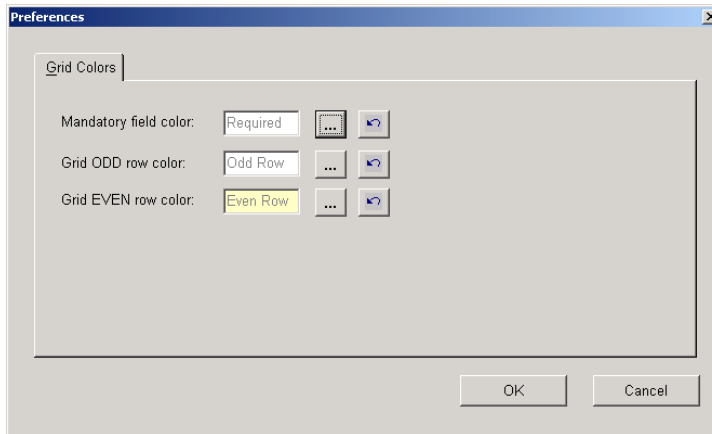
All *StoreLine/ISS45* data lists, or *grids* have alternate yellow and white rows for easy legibility. In addition, you can change the color of the system's mandatory fields.

You may choose any standard Windows color, or even define your own custom colors. If you don't like the results, you can always reset the system defaults.

Remember that people may spend many hours looking at data, so choose colors that are easy on the eye. We recommend using light pastel shades, grays and white.

➤ **To change grid colors**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Preferences and then Customize Application. The Preferences dialog box appears.



- 2 On the *Grid Colors* tab, click  next to the appropriate row option. The Windows color selector dialog box appears.
- 3 Select one of the standard colors, or click *Define Custom Color* to specify a custom color.
- 4 When you have selected a color, click *OK*.
- 5 To restore colors to the system default, click  next to the appropriate option.

5

Menu Builder and Menu Editor

The Menu Builder options allow you to add or delete users as well as menus. Once you have added users and menus, you can decide which users should have access to the menus you build.

Use the menu editor to customize the system menus to suit individual requirements. While 'regular' users are not allowed to customize their menus, they are free to add options from their menus to a personal favorites menu.

In this chapter:

Menu Builder, page 5-3
Adding, Editing and Deleting a User, page 5-4
Adding and Deleting a Menu, page 5-7
Linking Users to Menus, page 5-9
Menu Editor, page 5-11
About Security, page 5-11
Editing a Menu, page 5-12
Translating Menu Text, page 5-18

Menu Builder

You may want to construct specific menus for different levels of employee, or according to their job requirements.

A manager, or system administrator, for example, would most likely have full access to a complete menu, while cash office personnel would need access to the full complement of cash office utilities and related reports only.

Add or delete users and menus as required, then link them as appropriate.

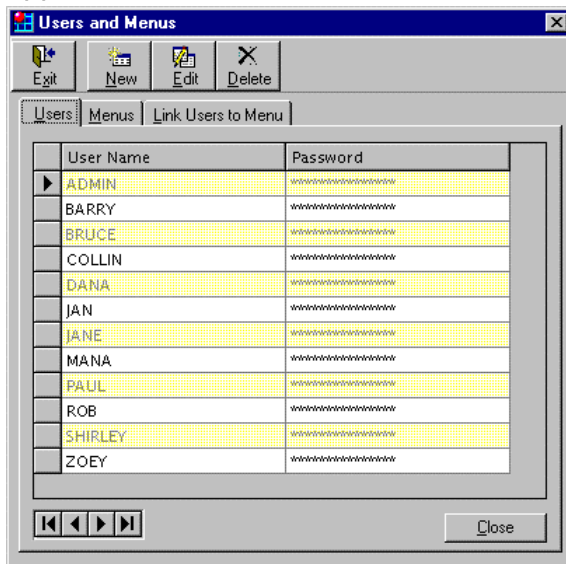
Users can access the system only when they have been added to the system and linked to a valid menu.

Adding, Editing and Deleting a User

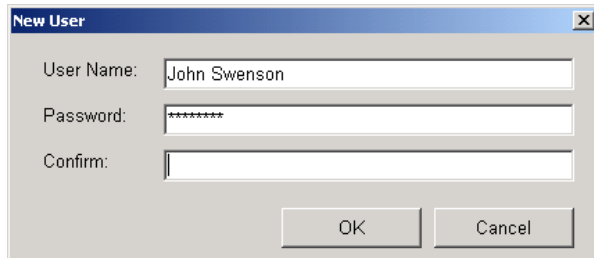
Add or delete system users, keeping in mind security considerations.

➤ **To add a new user**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Menu Builder, and then Link Users and Menus. The Users and Menus list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The New User dialog box appears.

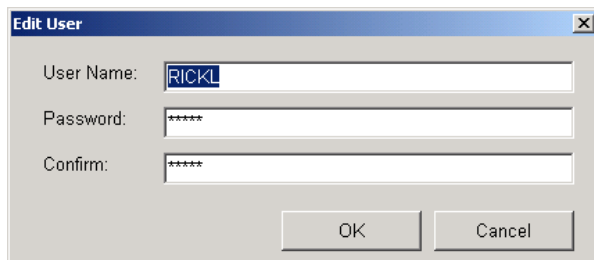
A screenshot of the 'New User' dialog box. It has a title bar with 'New User' and a close button. Inside, there are three text input fields: 'User Name:' with 'John Swenson', 'Password:' with '*****', and 'Confirm:' which is empty. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 3 Enter the user's name.
- 4 Type in and then confirm their password.
- 5 Click *OK* to save.

Once you have added users, you must add a menu (if not done yet), and then link users to the menu.

➤ **To edit a user name or password**

- 1 On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Users* tab.
- 2 On the toolbar, select *Edit*. The Edit User dialog box appears.

A screenshot of the 'Edit User' dialog box. It has a title bar with 'Edit User' and a close button. Inside, there are three text input fields: 'User Name:' with 'RICKL', 'Password:' with '*****', and 'Confirm:' with '*****'. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 3 Change the users name or password as required.
- 4 Click *OK* to save.

➤ **To delete a user**

- 1 On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Users* tab.
- 2 Highlight the user to delete and on the toolbar, select *Delete*. Confirm the deletion.

Note:

You cannot delete the ADMIN user. Admin is always linked to the DEFAULT menu.

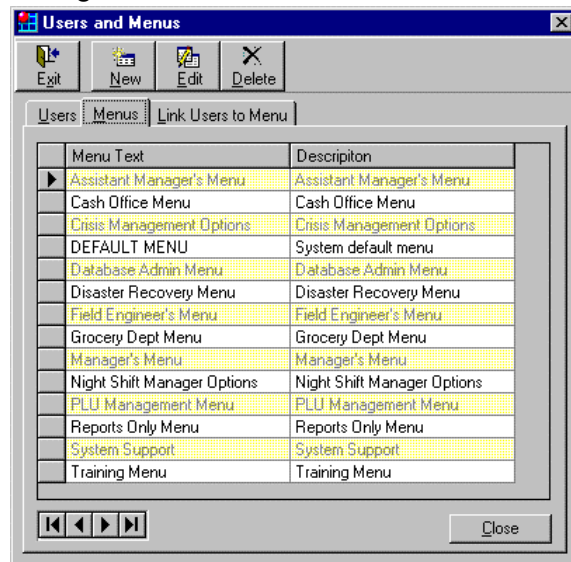
Adding and Deleting a Menu

Add as many menus as required in your store situation. Once you have added a menu, you can link users to it and then use the Menu Editor to build the menu. If you prefer, first build the appropriate menu and then link users to it.

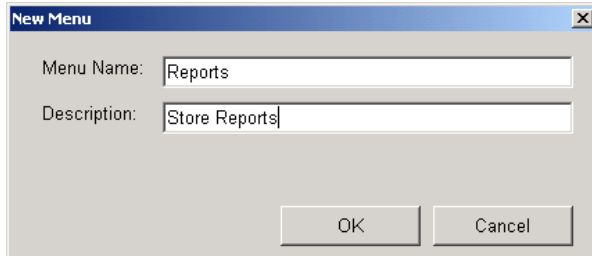
The default menu as supplied with the software CANNOT be edited or deleted. Normally, only senior personnel should be linked to this menu, as it includes all system options.

➤ **To add a new menu**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Menu Builder, and then Link Users and Menus. On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Menus* tab. The Menus list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The New Menu dialog box appears.



- 3 Enter the required menu name and a description.
- 4 Click *OK* to save.

You have now added users and menus. You can go ahead and link them together. See *Linking Users to Menus*, page 5-9.

➤ **To delete a menu**

Before you delete a menu, make sure there are no remote users logged in to it!

You cannot delete the DEFAULT menu.

- 1 On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Menus* tab.
- 2 Highlight the menu to delete and on the toolbar, select *Delete*. Confirm the deletion.

Linking Users to Menus

You can link a user to any number of menus. Users linked to more than one menu are prompted to select a menu when they log in to Office. Once logged in, users are allowed to switch between menus to which they have been linked.

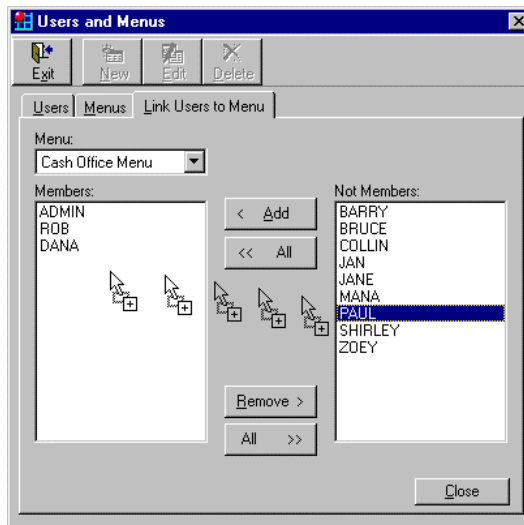
Users linked to only one menu will not see other menus, nor will they have access to any other menu.

Notes:

1. Remember security considerations when linking users to menus!
2. You cannot edit or delete the Default menu and Admin user.

➤ **To link a user to a menu**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Menu Builder, and then Link Users and Menus. On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Link Users to Menus* tab. The Link User to Menus dialog box appears.



You can link or unlink users with 'drag and drop' or with the *Add* and *Remove* buttons

- 2 Select the required menu.
- 3 Choose the users to link. Shift-click on individual users and then select *Add*, or to link all users, select *All*.
- 4 To unlink users, choose them and then select *Remove* or *All*.

Menu Editor

Use the Menu Editor to construct and modify menus to suit your requirements. You can construct new menus, delete menus, and add menu options.

In the Menu Builder option, first set up menus for different employee groups, managers, system administrators, and so on. For details, see *Menu Builder*, on page 5-3.

About Security

The easiest way to control access to menu options is by building menus with only those options relevant to an employee's job. You may allow a user to belong to any number of menus.

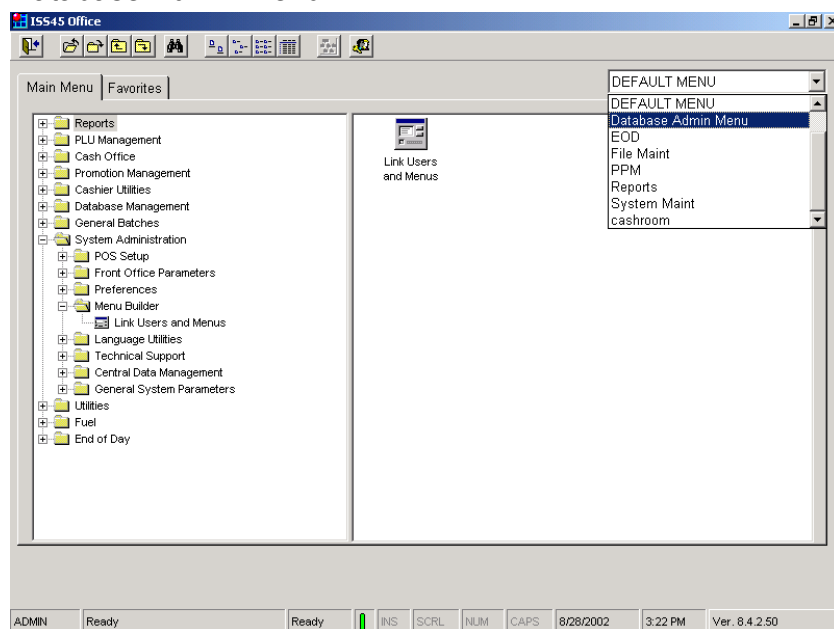
As System Administrator, you must take care not to include the Menu Builder option in user menus.

Editing a Menu

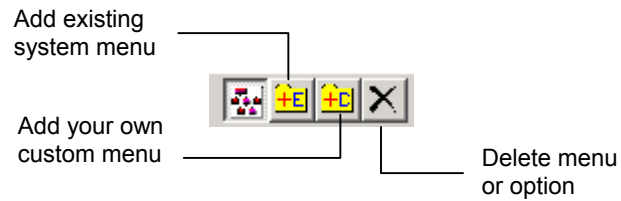
This section contains basic instructions and guidelines for adding options to menus, editing and deleting options.

➤ **To add folders (menus with options) to a menu**

- 1 Once you have added a new menu in Menu Builder, open the menu dropdown on the Main Menu (*StoreLine/ISS45 Office*) and select the menu you want to build. In this example, the Database Admin Menu.

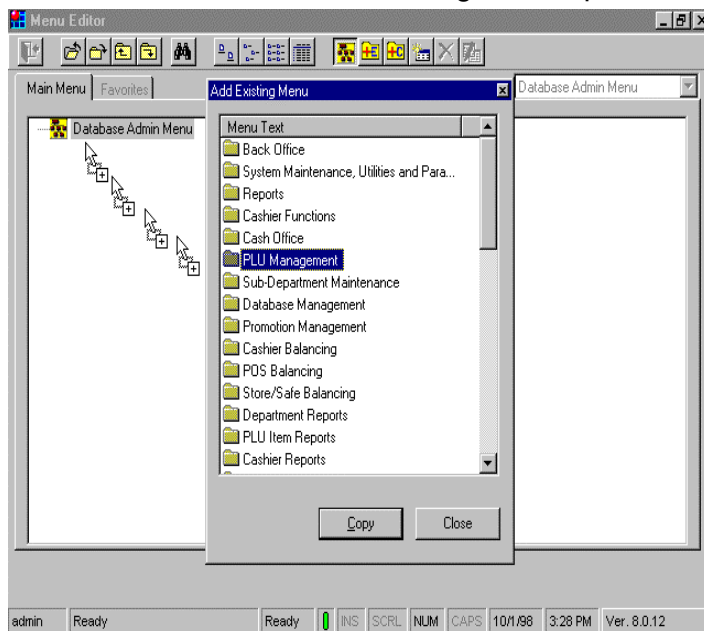


- 2 Click on the toolbar *Menu Editor* button . The menu name appears as the menu root, on the left of the menu, and the *Menu Editor* toolbar buttons become enabled.



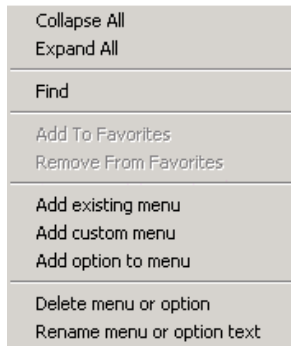
- 3 Add the required menus to the menu *root*. (Database Admin Menu). You may add existing menus as supplied with the software, or add custom menus with your own descriptions.

Illustrated here is the Add Existing Menu option 

**Notes:**

1. The 'existing menus' contain options as defined in the system's default menu.
2. You can select individual menus, or use Shift-click and Ctrl-click to choose multiple menus.

When you are in menu edit mode, use either the toolbar buttons as explained on the previous page, or the pop-up menu below (right-click on the mouse).

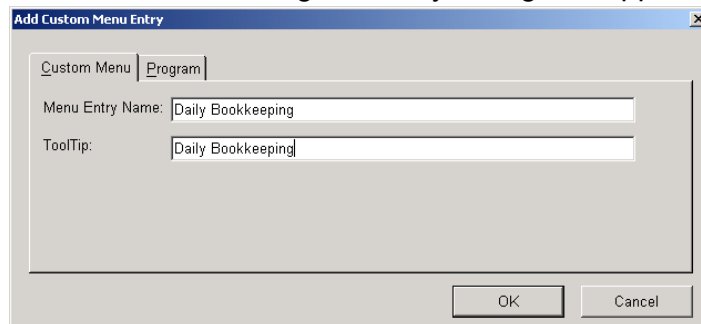


- 4 Add as many menus as required, then when finished click *Close*.

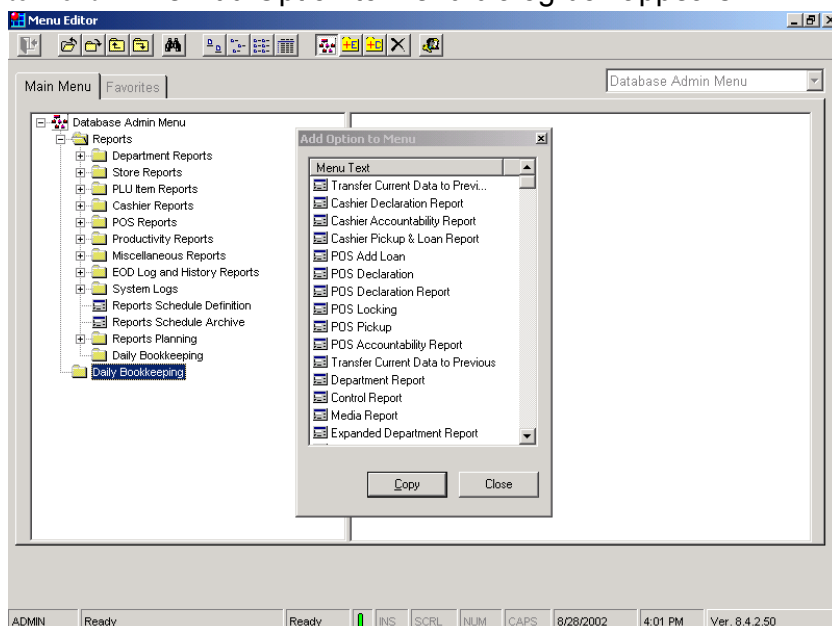
➤ **To add a custom menu**

This function adds only a menu *folder* and name; no options. After you have added menus, add options to the menu.

- 1 To add a custom menu, click the *Add Custom Menu* button . The Add Custom Program Entry dialog box appears.



- 2 Select the *Custom Menu* tab.
 - 3 Enter the required menu text and tooltip text and then click *OK*.
- **To add an option to the menu**
- 1 To add an option to the menu, first select the desired menu folder, right-click on the mouse, and then select *Add option to menu*. The Add Option to Menu dialog box appears.

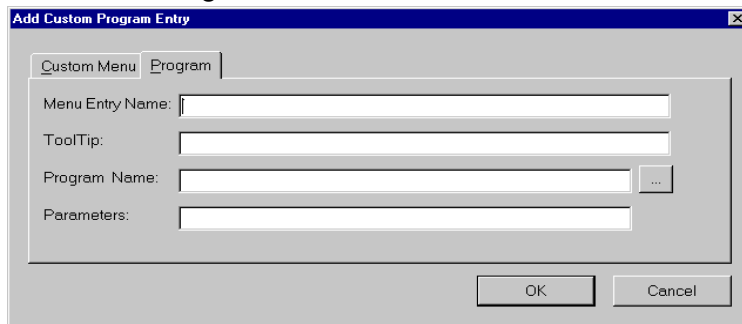


- 2 Select the required option or options. To copy them to the required folder, use *drag and drop* or click *Copy*.
- 3 Add as many options as required, then when finished click *Close*.

➤ **To add a Program or Application**

This function adds a program or application. For example, you may want the Calculator or Notepad applications added to your menu.

- 1 To add a program, click the *Add Custom Menu* button . The Add Custom Program Entry dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the Program tab.



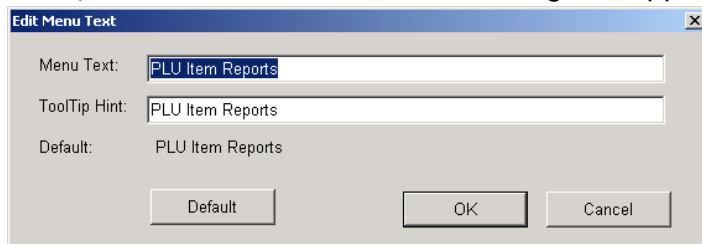
- 3 Enter the required menu entry name and tooltip text.
- 4 In the Program Name field box, click the *Browse* button .
- 5 Select the Program you want to add to your menu.
- 6 If necessary, enter the required parameters text and then click *OK*.

➤ **To delete a menu or option**

- 1 Select the menu or option.
- 2 Click the *Delete* menu or option button . If you are deleting a menu that includes options, you are prompted to confirm.

➤ **To rename menu or option text and tooltips**

- 1 To rename menu or option text, first select the required menu or option, right-click on the mouse, and then select *Rename menu or option text*. The Edit Menu Text dialog box appears.



Click *Default*
to restore
system default
text

- 2 Change the text as necessary and click *OK*.

Translating Menu Text

Use the Language Utilities options to translate all system messages, menu options and strings.

For details, see Chapter 6, Language Utilities.

6

In this chapter:

Language Utilities

StoreLine/ISS45 lets you operate with your language of choice. Use these options to specify languages, as well as translate from the default language, English to whichever language you specify.

Once you have specified languages, you can translate the entire system to the desired language.

**System Language,
page 6-3**

**Changing the System
Language, page 6-5**

**Translating Control
Names, page 6-6**

**Translating Strings,
page 6-8**

**Translating Messages,
page 6-10**

**Translating Menu Names,
page 6-13**

**Translating Report
Strings, page 6-15**

Change String, page 6-17

System Language

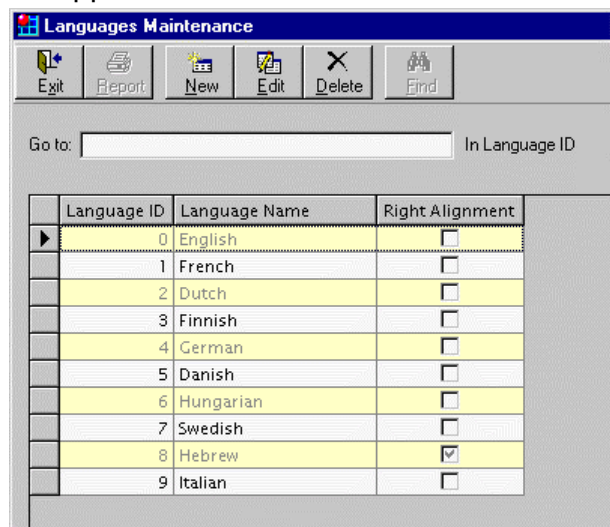
Use this option to add languages other than English, which is the system default.

Adding a System Language

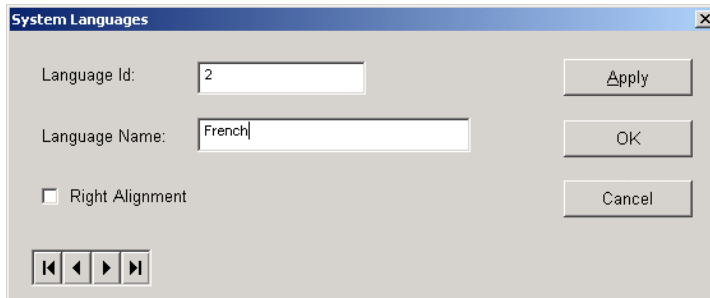
Add as many languages as required.

➤ **To add a new language**

- 1 From the System Administration Menu, select Language Utilities and then System Language. The System Language list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The System Languages dialog box appears.



- 3 Enter an ID number.

Note:

ID number 0 is English, the system default. You can neither edit nor delete English.

- 4 Type in the language name.
- 5 For Middle Eastern languages, select right alignment option.
- 6 Click *OK* to save.

Changing the System Language

You may switch the system language at any time.

➤ **To switch languages**

- 1 At any time, press *Ctrl+L*. The Language dialog box appears.



- 2 From the dropdown list, select the required language and click *OK*. The system now displays with the selected language.

About Translating

Translation of text to other languages can increase the length of text by 30 percent or more. There is often limited space for displaying translated text, like in control buttons, dropdown lists, status bars and toolbar buttons. Keep descriptions clear and short.

When the system was designed and programmed, extra space was (as far as possible) given to text fields.

It is always a good idea to check your work as you progress, ensuring that your translations do not run over the available space.

Translate Control Names

You can translate text of any form (dialog box), including its control buttons and tooltips.

The easiest way to translate a form is described here. Another way is to use the Translate Strings option. See page 6-8

➤ To translate Control Names (Forms Text)

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Controls. The Translate Control Names (Form Names) list appears.

Translate Control Names

Go to: In Form Name Ascending

Form Name: Languages: Translated:

Form Name	Control Name	Language	Text	Tooltip	Translated
	cmdCancel	English	Cancel		☐
	cmdCancel	French	Cancel		☐
	cmdOK	English	OK		☐
	cmdOK	French	OK		☐
	frmLogin	English			☐
	frmLogin	French			☐
	lblLabels	English	&User Name:		☐
	lblLabels	French	&User Name:		☐
	lblLabels	English	&Password:		☐
	lblLabels	French	&Password:		☐

Close

ADMIN Ready Ready INS SCRL NUM CAPS 9/18/2002 10:57 AM Ver. 8.4.2.50

Text for all components of the selected form is displayed.

- 2 From the Form Name dropdown list, select the form name (e.g., Alerts Log) that you want to translate.
- 3 From the Languages dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English form name, with the selected language below. The form name appears in English until you have translated it.
- 4 Double-click on the Form Name to translate. The Translate Control Names dialog box displays.

The screenshot shows the 'Translate Control Names' dialog box. It has a title bar with the text 'Translate Control Names' and a close button. The dialog is divided into several sections. At the top, there are two text input fields: 'Form:' and 'Control:'. The 'Control:' field contains the text 'cmdCancel'. Below these is a section titled 'English Source' which contains two text input fields: 'Tooltip:' and 'Text:'. The 'Text:' field contains the text 'Cancel'. Below this is a section titled 'Translate to' which contains a 'Language:' dropdown menu set to 'French', and two text input fields: 'Tooltip:' and 'Text:'. The 'Text:' field contains the text 'Cancel'. At the bottom of the dialog, there are four small navigation buttons (back, forward, etc.) and three larger buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

- 5 Enter the tooltip and translated text in the selected language.

Note:

Some dialog text and buttons have shortcut (accelerator) keys, like Apply. When translating, remember to insert "&" immediately to the left of the accelerator letter. For example; &Apply.

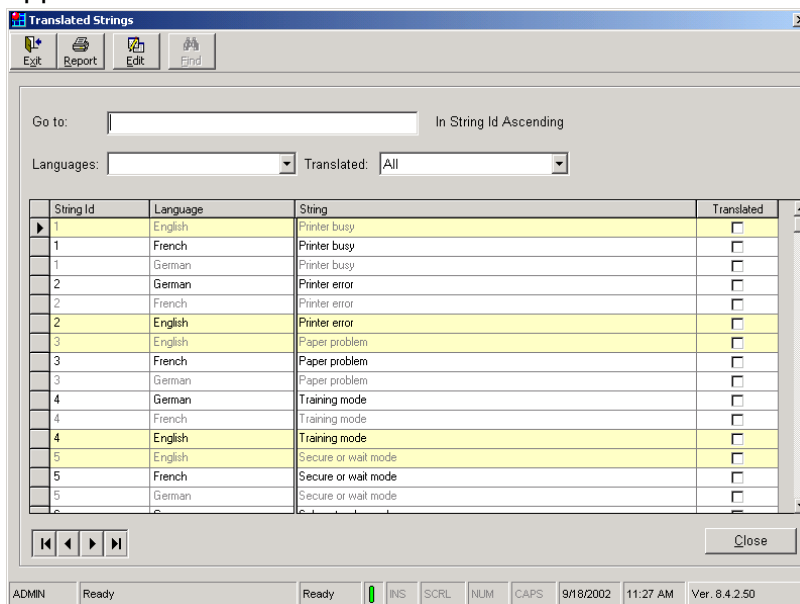
- 6 Click OK to save.

Translating Strings

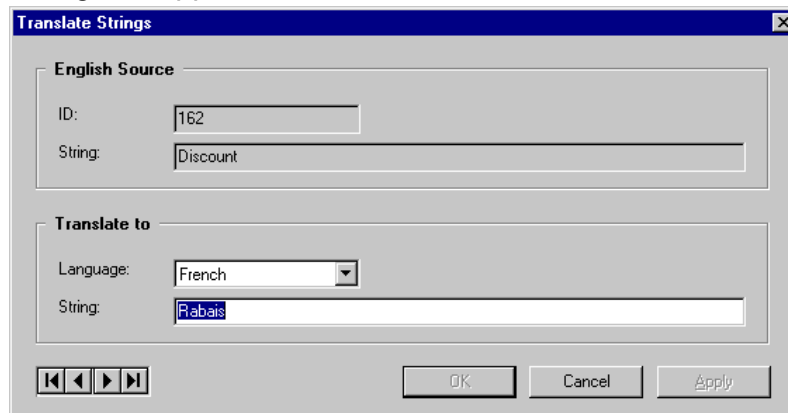
Use this option to translate the entire system's text fields. This includes text for report names and all text labels within dialog boxes (forms) and most other system components.

➤ **To translate Strings**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Strings. The Translate Strings list appears.



- 2 From the Language dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English strings, with the selected language below. These strings appear in English until you have translated them.
- 3 Double-click on the desired string. The Translate Strings dialog box appears.



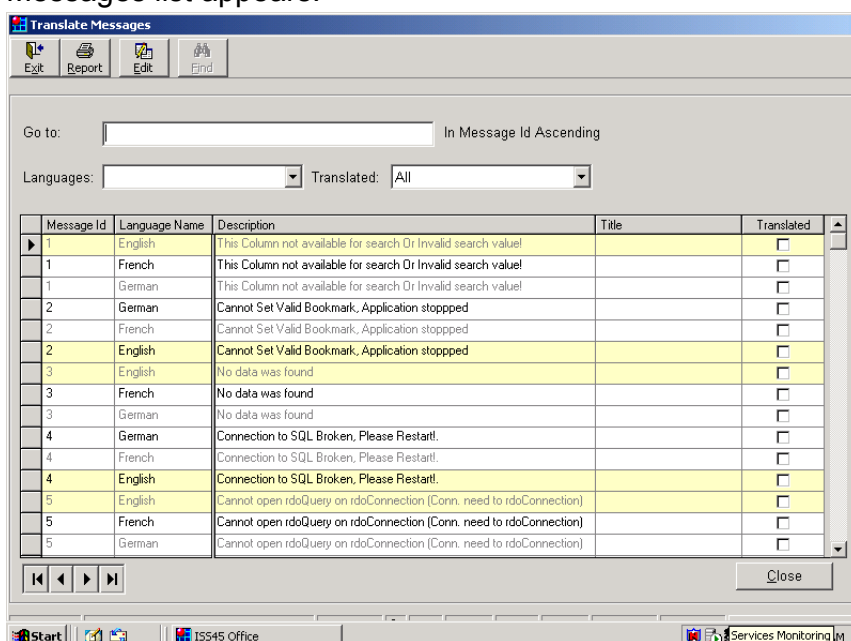
- 4 Enter the required string in the selected language.
- 5 Click OK to save.

Translate Messages

All system messages; error, warning and informative, are listed and can be translated. You can also translate message box title text.

➤ To translate Messages

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Messages. The Translate Messages list appears.



- 2 From the Language dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English messages, with the selected language below. These messages appear in English until you have translated them.
- 3 Double-click on the desired message. The Translate Messages dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Translate Messages' dialog box. It is divided into two main sections: 'English Source' and 'Translate to'. In the 'English Source' section, the 'ID' field contains '133', the 'Title' field contains 'ISS45 - FrontOffice', and the 'Text' field contains 'Cannot Pickup, Cashier : %2 is signed off!'. In the 'Translate to' section, the 'Language' dropdown menu is set to 'Danish', the 'Title' field contains 'ISS45 - FrontOffice', and the 'Text' field contains 'Cannot Pickup, Cashier : %2 is signed off!'. At the bottom of the dialog, there are four buttons: a set of navigation arrows (left, right, first, last), 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

- 4 Enter the Title (required message box). This is optional - you may prefer to leave the default system name in error message titles.

- 5 Enter the message text translation in the selected language.

Note:

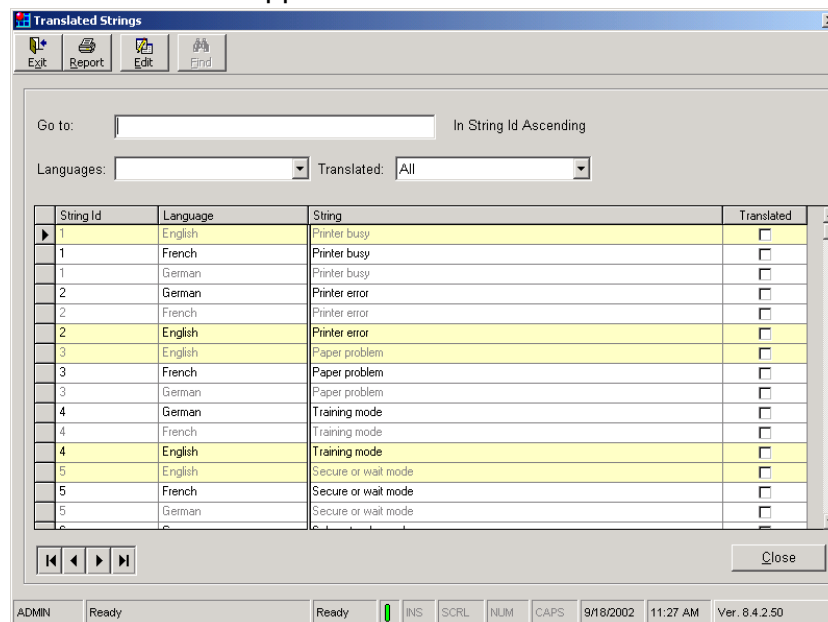
Some message text contains variables (indicated by the "%" sign and a value). This means that when messages appear, the percent sign is replaced with a relevant value. For example; "Cashier %2 is signed off!". Take care not to overwrite the variable, and ensure it is in the correct position in the translated text.

- 6 Click *OK* to save.

Translating Menu Names

This utility lets you translate menu (folder) names, as well as their tooltips.

- **To translate menu names**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Menu Names. The Translate Menu Names list appears.



- 2 From the Language dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English menu names, with the selected language below. These menu names appear in English until you have translated them.
- 3 Double-click on the desired menu name. The Translate Menu Names dialog box appears.

Translate Menu Names

English Source

ID: 12

Menu Name: Cashier Functions

Tooltip: Cashier Functions

Translate to

Language: Danish

Menu Name: Cashier Functions

Tooltip: Cashier Functions

Navigation buttons: [Back] [Forward] [Home] [End] [Find]

Buttons: OK Cancel Apply

- 4 Enter the menu name translation.
- 5 Enter the appropriate tooltip in the selected language.
- 6 Click OK to save.

Translate Report Strings

All *StoreLine/ISS45 reports* are listed and can be translated. You can translate the report names as well as the field descriptions.

➤ **To translate Report Strings**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Report Strings. The Translate Report Strings list appears.

Go to: In Report Name Ascending

Report Name: Languages: Translated:

Report Name	String Id	Language	String	Translated
Store Sales Report	1	English		☐
Store Sales Report	1	French		☐
Store Sales Report	2	English		☐
Store Sales Report	2	French		☐
Store Sales Report	3	English		☐
Store Sales Report	3	French		☐
Store Sales Report	4	English		☐
Store Sales Report	4	French		☐
Store Sales Report	5	English	Store Sales Report	☐
Store Sales Report	5	French	Store Sales Report	☐
Store Sales Report	22	English	Branch	☐
Store Sales Report	22	French	Branch	☐
Store Sales Report	23	English	By	☐
Store Sales Report	23	French	By	☐
Store Sales Report	24	English	Page	☐
Store Sales Report	24	French	Page	☐

Close

- 2 From the Report Name dropdown list, select the report (e.g., Store Sales Report) that you want to translate.

- 3 From the Languages dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English report strings, with the selected language below. The report strings appear in English until you have translated it.
- 4 Double-click on the Report string to translate. The Translate Report Strings dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Translate Report Strings". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Report Name:** A text box containing "Store Sales Report".
- English Source:** A section containing:
 - ID:** A text box containing "5".
 - String:** A text box containing "Store Sales Report".
- Translate to:** A section containing:
 - Language:** A dropdown menu with "French" selected.
 - String:** A text box containing "Store Sales Report".
- Navigation:** A set of four small buttons (back, forward, etc.) at the bottom left.
- Buttons:** "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply" buttons at the bottom right.

- 5 Enter the required string in the selected language.
- 6 Click OK to save.

Change String

Use this utility to perform global translations throughout the system, including text for report names, field labels, menus, system messages and controls.

➤ To Change Strings

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Change Strings. The Change String dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "By String Change". It contains two main sections: "Change String" and "By Criteria". In the "Change String" section, the "From:" field is populated with "Cashier Coupons Report" and the "To:" field is empty. The "By Criteria" section has two radio buttons: "By Tables" (selected) and "All". Under "By Tables", there are checkboxes for "Strings", "Menus", "Messages", "Controls", and "Report Strings" (which is checked). To the right of these checkboxes is a "Languages:" label and a dropdown menu currently showing "French". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Change String" and "Close".

- 2 In the Change String area:
 - Enter the appropriate string to translate in the *From* field.
 - Enter the text translation in the *To* field.

- 3 In the By Criteria selection area:
 - Select the *By Tables* radio button to enable you to select specific areas of the system to apply the translation. Select the desired checkbox(es).
 - Select the *All* radio button to apply the translation to all areas of the system.
- 4 From the Languages dropdown list, select the language you want to apply the translations to.
- 5 Click *Change String* to perform the translation.

7

Technical Support

Options in Technical Support are for use by field engineer or dealer support personnel only.

In this chapter:

Master File Create,
page 7-3

Store Open Service,
page 7-3

**Clearing the System's
Transaction Data,**
page 7-4

System Integrity,
page 7-5

**System Integrity
Parameters,** page 7-5

**QDX Files Checksum
Table,** page 7-9

**Load/Refresh QDX Files
to POS,** page 7-11

Technical Parameters,
page 7-13

Master File Create

Master File Create (Build PLU File from Host File) is used to build a PLU database from a host file. A host file is similar to a batch that is placed into a temporary directory, from where it is imported as a PLU database.

This utility is used only by Technical Support.



WARNING:

The new PLU database will overwrite any existing PLU database in the system, so it is important that any existing QDX database files are zipped. The zipped files can be extracted after the Master File Create has been performed, and copied into the new database, if required.

Store Open Service

This option is used in new stores only, to clear all training transactions, sales and reports from the system. Databases are left intact.

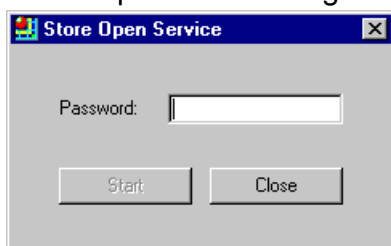
Clearing the System's Transaction Data

Running this utility clears ALL sales and transaction data from the system. You can use this option as often as you like DURING TRAINING.

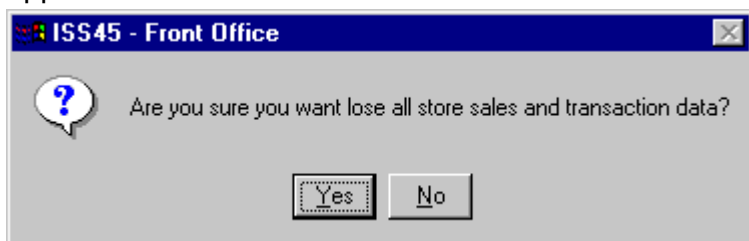
You MUST clear all transaction data before a new store goes live.

➤ **To clear system data**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, and then Store Open Service. The Store Open Service password dialog box appears.



- 2 Enter the password and click *Start*. A warning message appears.



- 3 If you are absolutely sure, select *Yes*; otherwise select *No*.

System Integrity

System Integrity is intended as a protection against file corruption and to ensure correct prices and other data in the system at all times.

Use this option to define how the System Integrity option must perform. You can also specify which QDX files must pass a checksum process during End of Day.

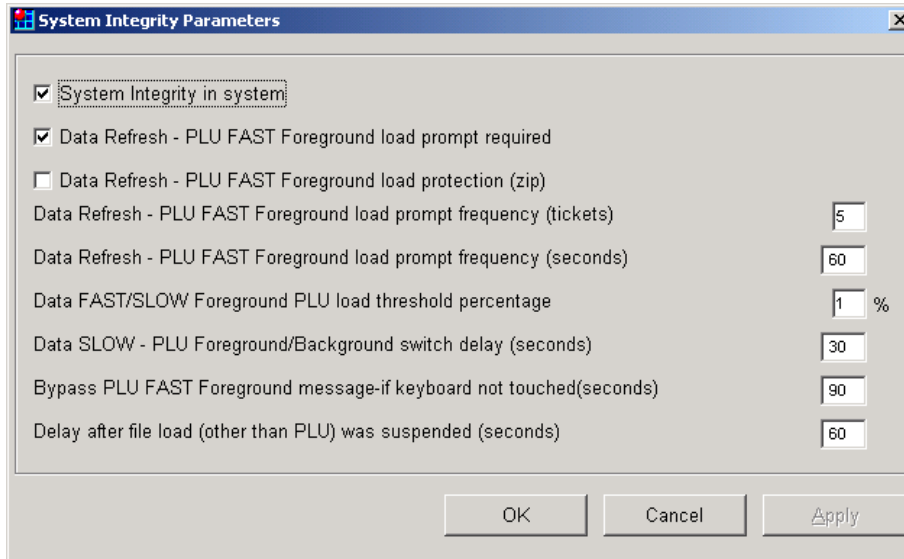
System Integrity also safeguards data when a POS terminal has been working off-line (after End of Day has been done), and is then reconnected. The system will then refresh ALL the POS terminal's data files.

System Integrity Parameters

This option allows you to define the System Integrity options and parameters for the system.

➤ **To set System Integrity**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, System Integrity, and then System Integrity Parameters. The System Integrity Parameters dialog box appears.



- 2 Set the options and parameters, as described below.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
System Integrity in system	Select this parameter to enable System Integrity. (To allow checksum and data files refresh.)

Parameter	Description
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt required	Select this parameter if a cashier prompt is required. A <i>foreground</i> load will occur if the Keyboard is not touched for 'n' seconds. A <i>foreground</i> load is fast, <i>background</i> is slow.
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load protection (zip)	The system will zip the POS terminal's PLU file and start a <i>fast block load</i> . This could take fifteen minutes on 130,000 active PLUs. If loading fails, the zipped file will be reused again.
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt frequency (tickets)	Specify how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in <i>tickets</i> . The available range is 0 to 99.
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt frequency (seconds)	Specify how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in <i>seconds</i> .
Data FAST/SLOW Foreground PLU load threshold percentage	The POS terminal checks active records and compares with the MFS. If a difference of 'n' percentage is found, the PLU file is zipped and a fast block load starts. If a cashier is logged on, a prompt (see parameter <i>Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt required</i>) recommends to the cashier to perform a fast block load. You can allow the cashier to override this prompt. (See the <i>Bypass</i> parameter below.) Enter the required percentage difference. If the checksum fails, and the difference is less than the percentage you specify, the

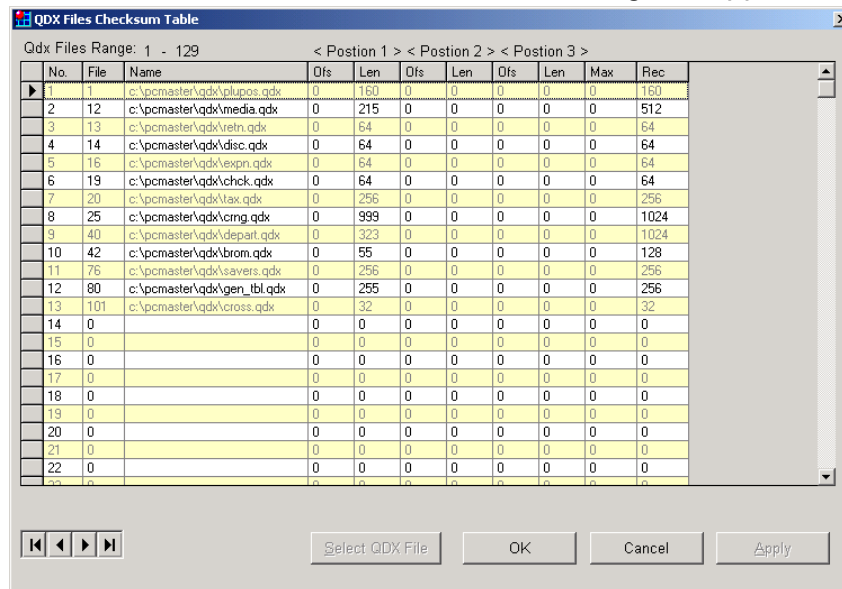
Parameter	Description
	system will use the slow (foreground) load, and then switch between foreground and background depending on keyboard activity. If the difference is greater than the specified percentage, the fast load will be used.
Data SLOW-PLU Foreground/ Background switch delay (seconds)	Enter the number of seconds of keyboard activity and inactivity, before a file load switches from foreground to background (and vice versa).
Bypass PLU FAST Foreground message - if keyboard not touched (seconds)	Enter the number of seconds of keyboard inactivity, after which the prompt begins to display again.
Delay after File Load (Other than PLU) was Suspended (seconds)	This parameter relates to the number of seconds to wait before data refresh is resumed (for all files apart from the PLU file) after the cashier suspends Data Refresh.

QDX Files Checksum Table

Use the QDX Files Checksum Table to select the required files for checking, and specify how you want them checked.

➤ To set QDX Files Checksum Table

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support, System Integrity, and then QDX Files Checksum Table. The QDX Files Checksum Table dialog box appears.



- 2 Highlight the required file and press *Enter* to select it.
- 3 Move the cursor to the Offset (Ofs) field and enter the required value.

- 4 At the Length (Len) field, enter the required length.

Note

You can check up to three fields in each file.

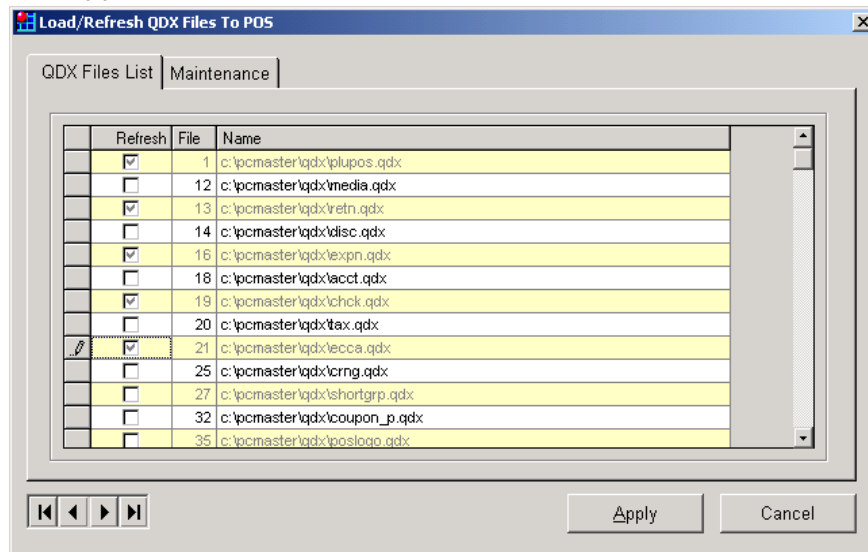
- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS

This option allows you to immediately load or refresh the QDX files to all or selected POS terminals.

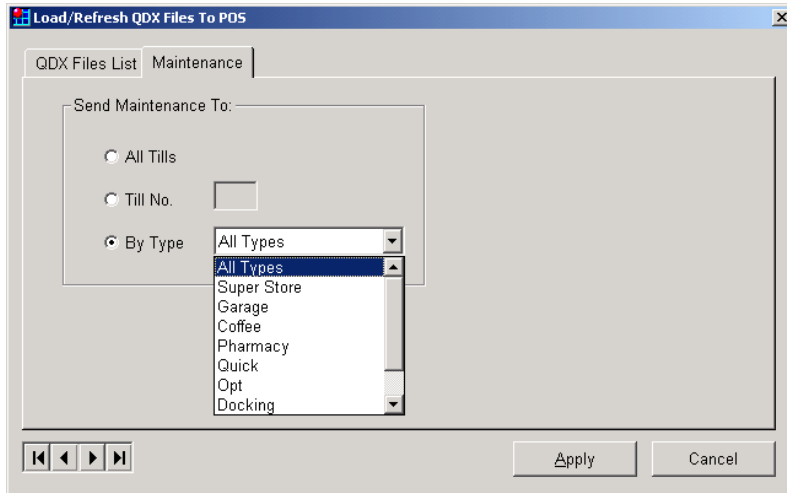
➤ To load/refresh QDX Files to POS

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, System Integrity, and then Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS. The Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS tabbed dialog box appears.



- 2 Select the checkboxes for the required QDX files to be sent to the POS terminal(s).

- 3 After you have checked the appropriate QXD files, select the *Maintenance* tab. The Maintenance tab is displayed, showing the options available for sending maintenance to the POS terminal(s).



- 4 In the *Send Maintenance To:* area, you can select the *All Tills* radio button to send maintenance to all tills; select the *Till No.* radio button to send to a specific till; or select the *By Type* radio button to send to a group of tills.

Note:

Refer to *Chapter 2, POS Setup*, in this guide, for details on Till Types.

- 5 Click *Apply* to immediately send the QDX maintenance to the POS terminal(s).

Technical Parameters

Technical parameters relate to various hardware/software configurations that may be used by your store.

➤ **To set Technical Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Technical Parameters. The Technical Parameters dialog box is displayed.

Technical Parameters

CCMS

Host CCMS type: Corema

Local CCMS type: None

PC to use as CCMS server: MFS1

2nd PC to use as CCMS server: LFS3

Port number: 0

CCMS alias in HOSTS file:

PCCS

PC to use as PCCS server: MFS1

Eldat

☒ Eldat on system

API

☐ V7 API calls update SQL

OK Cancel Apply

- 2 Enter the appropriate data in the parameter fields, as described below.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
CCMS area:	
Host CCMS type	Select the data warehousing service from the following dropdown list: • None • Corema • Fry's VIP Club • OEM
Local CCMS type	Set this parameter through the General System Parameter Tree. Refer to <i>Chapter 1, System Parameter Tree</i> for parameter details.
PC to use as CCMS server	Select the PC through which two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled (e.g., MFS1, MFS2 or LFS3).
2 nd PC to use as CCMS Server	Select the PC through which two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled, in the event that the primary server fails (e.g., MFS1, MFS2 or LFS3).
Port Number	Specify the port connection number.
CCMS alias in HOSTS file	Enter a text description of the PC server. Note: The alias can be retrieved from the HOST file. The alias, together with the PC's IP address, is store in the HOST file.
PCCS area:	

Parameter	Description
PC to use as PCCS server	Select the PC to be used as the PCCS comm's servers (e.g., MFS1, MFS2 or LFS3).
Eldat on system	Select this parameter if Eldat Shelf-edge Labels are used in the store.
V7 API calls update SQL	Select this parameter to update both QDX and SQL PLU databases when third party applications are used.

8

System Alerts

System alerts notify office staff or management of technical problem, security violations, and other irregular or exceptional situations on the POS terminals or Back Office computers.

Alert messages are displayed on a Back Office workstation, recorded in a log, added to the Event Viewer, and/or sent to defined recipients, depending on the specified parameters.

In this chapter:

Overview, page 8-3

Alerts Maintenance, page 8-5

Alerts Parameters, page 8-21

Alerts Recipient, page 8-23

Alerts Log, page 8-32

Overview

Systems alerts are messages that are automatically generated when certain predefined events or transactions occur. They may appear as a pop-up message that is displayed on a server in the Back Office or on a workstation. In addition, the system can be programmed to record alerts in a log or to send a message to designated recipients using a number of methods, for example, email or fax.

The System Alerts menu is located in the Utilities folder in the Main Menu.

This chapter contains the following sections:

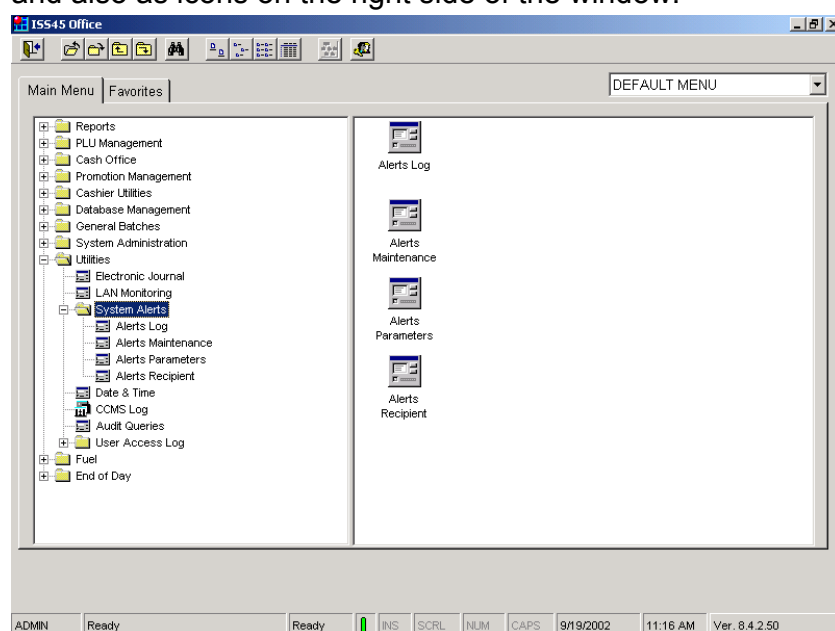
- **Alerts Maintenance**, page 8-5, enables you to add and/or edit alerts, to define their importance and who should receive them.
- **Alerts Parameters**, page 8-21, enables you to define which servers and/or workstations should receive alerts.
- **Alerts Recipient**, page 8-23, enables you to define recipients of system alerts and their contact information.
- **Alerts Log**, page 8-32, displays a record of the alerts that the system has generated, together with the time of the alert and when it was acknowledged.

Accessing the System Alerts Menu

The Systems Alerts menu is located in the Utilities folder.

➤ **To access the System Alerts menu**

- 1 In the StoreLine/ISS45 Office window, click the *Main Menu* tab and then select Utilities.
- 2 From the Utilities folder, select System Alerts. The System Alerts components are displayed in the System Alerts menu, and also as icons on the right side of the window.

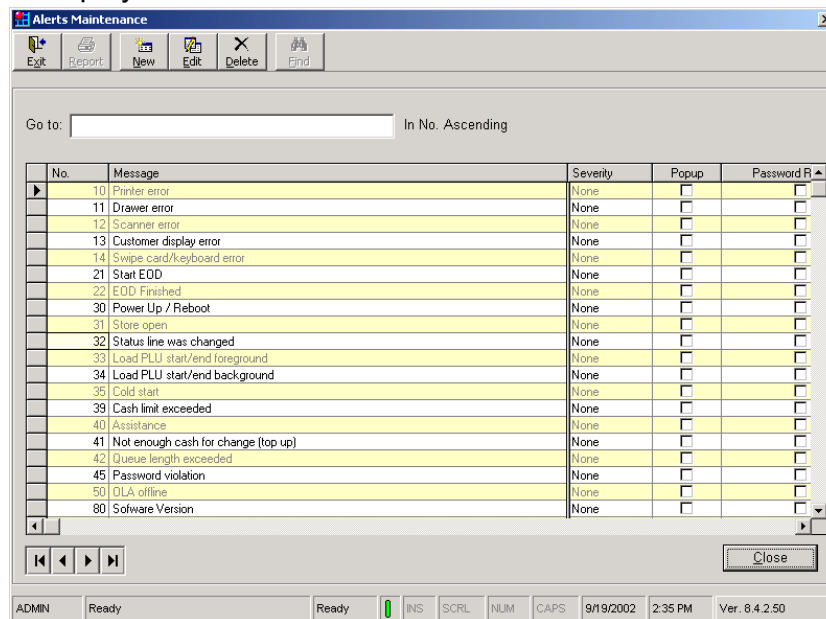


Alerts Maintenance

The Alerts Maintenance function enables you to define alerts and their behavior. StoreLine/ISS45 is already configured with numerous alerts, which you can view in the Alerts Maintenance window. New alerts may be defined if required.

➤ **To access the Alerts Maintenance window**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu, double-click on Alerts Maintenance or double-click on the *Alerts Maintenance* icon on the right side of the window. The Alerts Maintenance window is displayed.



The Alerts Maintenance window comprises the following components:

■ **Toolbar**

The following buttons are displayed in the toolbar at the top of the window:

Button	Description
	Exits the Alerts Maintenance window and returns to the ISS45 window.
	The Report tool is unavailable for this function.
	Enables you to add new alerts.
	Enables you to edit an existing alert.
	Enables you to delete an existing alert.
	The Find tool is not enabled in this version.

■ **Go To Field**

The *Go to* field enables you to specify the alert ID code that you want to select in the list of alerts. After you have selected the field by clicking on the column heading, enter a number or letter, as appropriate, to specify to which alert you require the arrow to point.

■ The Alerts List

System alerts are listed in a table in the center of the Alerts Maintenance window. The following information fields are provided for each alert:

Field	Description
No.	The unique alert code.
Message	The message that will be displayed when the alert is generated.
Severity	The severity level that has been attached to the alert.
Popup	Checked to indicate that the alert will generate a popup message.
Password	Selected to indicate that a password must be entered in order to acknowledge the alert. This prevents unauthorized personnel from acknowledging alerts.
Ignore	Selected to indicate that alert is deactivated.

■ Selection Arrows

Enable you to scroll through the alerts list.



Use the arrows at the extreme left and extreme right to navigate to the first and last alerts in the list. The center arrows enable you to navigate up and down the list by single alerts.

Predefined Alerts

The following alerts have been predefined in the system.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
10	Printer Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is an error with in-lane printer, for example, 'Paper Low' or 'Printer Busy'.
11	Drawer Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is an error with the cash, for example, 'Unauthorized opening of a cash drawer'.
12	Scanner Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is a problem with the scanner.
13	Customer Display Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is a problem with the customer display.
14	Swipe Card/Keyboard Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is an error with the magnetic card reader.
21	Start EOD	EOD has started on a specific POS terminal.
22	EOD Finished	EOD has finished on a specific POS terminal.
30	Power Up / Reboot	A specific POS terminal was powered up or rebooted.
31	Store Open	The Store Open process, which is generated from the Back Office, generated a transaction from the POS terminal. (Only once a day.)

Alert Code	Alert	Description
32	Status line was changed	This alert is not currently available.
33	Load PLU Start/End Foreground	This alert displays at the POS terminal, when a Data Refresh of the PLU file will take place in the foreground.
34	Load PLU Start/End Background	This alert displays at the POS terminal, when a Data Refresh of the PLU file will take place in the background.
35	Cold Start	The memory of a POS terminal was cleared of all information. This function is generally performed by a manager or technical support person, in order to clear a problem in the POS terminal.
39	Cash Limit Exceeded	Displays when the cash in the drawer exceeds the maximum amount set in the system.
40	Assistance	Assistance of a supervisor required (generally in order to remove excess cash from the cash drawer).
41	Not enough cash for change (top up)	The level of cash in the cash drawer is insufficient to provide change.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
42	Queue length exceeded	The number of customers in the queue entered, exceeds the maximum number set in the system. (The number of customers in the queue is entered by the cashier, who is prompted by the system to enter the information into the terminal.)
45	Password violation	A password has been incorrectly entered.
50	OLA Offline	Displays when communications is lost to the Pay-at-the-Pump Payment System. (Used only with Fuel.)
80	Software version	Displays which software version is running on a specific POS terminal.
88	File Load	A file load from the Back Office was received by the POS terminal.
89	File Refresh	A maintenance update from the Back Office was received by the POS terminal.
90	Start/End of RS Batch	Displays at the start/end of a Rsession at the POS terminal.
91	Program Corrupt	This alert is currently not supported.
99	Loyalty Server Offline	Displays at the POS terminal when the Customer Loyalty Server is offline.
102	Fiscal Error	This alert is supported in Europe and currently not required in North America.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
103	Start Fiscal EOD	This alert is supported in Europe and currently not required in North America.
110	Message Received	A message sent from the Message Center has been received.
112	CCMS.QDX on POS is full. Please call for technical support	This alert is used for Corema and OEM. It is Posted when the loyalty QDX file is full and requires manual intervention to clear it. (Note: The Loyalty QDX file name is CCMS.QDX.)
113	POS Email	This alert is sent by the POS terminal to MFS1 or MFS2 when using the internal email functionality (between the POS terminal and MFS).
114	POS not Sign as Active in "POS Configuration". Call Support!	This alert displays when the POS terminal is not flagged as an active till in the Post Configuration parameters. (Refer to <i>Chapter 2, POS Setup</i> , in this manual.)
115	POS Disk Size Limit	Insufficient disk space is detected at the POS terminal.
201	End of day has started	EOD for the Back Office has begun.
202	End of day has finished	EOD for the Back Office has been completed.
203	POS offline during EOD	A POS terminal was offline when EOD was started in the Back Office.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
206	Not all transactions sent by POS before EOD	Some of the transactions sent from the POS terminals were not received in the Back Office prior to EOD being run.
207	Not all maintenance received by POS before EOD	Some of the maintenance updates sent from the Back Office to the POS terminals were not received by the terminals before EOD was started.
222	Package	This alert is reserved for future development.
232	No COMM to POS. POS offline?	A POS terminal may be offline.
233	3 Password Violations in Secure Mode	Displays at the Back Office when there is a 3 password violation in Secure Mode at a POS terminal.
236	Error while executing PLU batch	One of the daily PLU batches was not created successfully.
239	MFS2 did not receive QDX and SQL. See End of Day Logs	Displays when MFS2 does not receive complete QDX and SQL updates from MF1, during the EOD.
299	Unauthorized drawer opening	The specified cash drawer was opened without authorization.
300	General text transaction	An alert generated by a third party transaction or 'hook', together with 'free' text.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
301	CRC error: difference between QDX and SQL. See End of Day logs.	When the QDX data and the SQL data were compared, inconsistencies were found.
601	Disk Space Below Limit	Insufficient disk space is detected on the MFS or workstation.
602	CDM	This alert is reserved for future development.
1000	Grade Price changes pending. View General Batches for details.	Displays when there are pending fuel price changes. (Used only with Fuel.)

Note:

Alert code numbers 21 - 115 relate to alerts generated by POS terminals.
Numbers 201 - 1000 are for alerts generated by the Back Office Servers.
Numbers 1001 - 2000 are user-programmable.

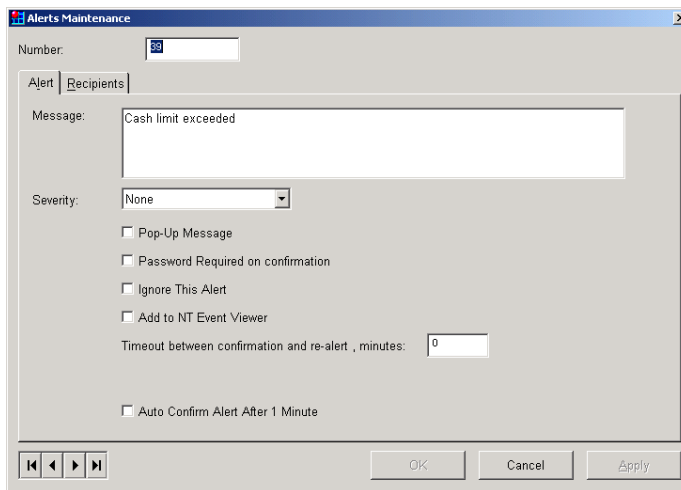
Defining Alert Specifications

You can set parameters to define if and when alerts should be displayed, what the severity level should be and how predefined recipients should be notified. In addition, you can specify which recipients will receive the alert. For further information about alerts recipients, refer to *Alerts Recipient*, on page 8-23.

These parameters are defined when you add a new alert. In addition, you can modify the parameters of an existing alert, as described below.

➤ To modify an alert

- 1 In the Alerts Maintenance window, highlight the alert that requires modification and click *Edit* or double-click on the alert that requires modification. The Alert Maintenance tabbed dialog box is displayed, showing all the current parameters for the selected alert.

The image shows the 'Alerts Maintenance' dialog box. It has a title bar with a close button. Below the title bar is a 'Number' field with the value '82'. There are two tabs: 'Alert' (selected) and 'Recipients'. The 'Alert' tab contains a 'Message' text area with the text 'Cash limit exceeded'. Below the message is a 'Severity' dropdown menu set to 'None'. There are four checkboxes: 'Pop-Up Message', 'Password Required on confirmation', 'Ignore This Alert', and 'Add to NT Event Viewer'. Below these is a 'Timeout between confirmation and re-alert, minutes' field with the value '0'. At the bottom of the dialog is an 'Auto Confirm Alert After 1 Minute' checkbox. At the very bottom are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'. Navigation arrows are located at the bottom left of the dialog box.

- 2 In the Alert tab of the dialog box, enter the required information and/or select the checkboxes to generate the relevant activity.

The following fields are available:

Field	Description
Message	Type the Alert message that is to be displayed when the specific event occurs.
Severity	Select a severity level for the alert from the dropdown list. Severity levels are described on page 8-18.
Pop-Up Message	Select this box if you want the alert to pop-up on the defined workstations, as described in the section, <i>Defining Which PCs Receive Alerts</i> , on page 8-21. If Pop-Up Message is not selected, and the Ignore this Alert checkbox is unchecked, the alert will still be displayed in the Alerts log if the relevant event occurs.
Password Required on confirmation	Select this box if you want the user to enter a user name and password in order to acknowledge receipt of the alert. This prevents unauthorized personnel from acknowledging alerts.
Ignore This Alert	The alert remains in the system's memory but does not generate any alerts or appear in the Alerts Log.
Add to NT Event Viewer	Sends the alert to NT Event Viewer to be displayed in the system log.

Field	Description
Timeout between confirmation and re-alert, minutes	Type in a number representing the number of minutes before the system checks for the alert again. Set this parameter to a high value in order to avoid having the same type of alert pop up too frequently. For a critical type alert, set the value to 1 minute.
Auto Confirm Alert After 1 Minute	Select this checkbox to automatically confirm the alert after one minute.

- 3 Click *Apply* to save the changes and leave the dialog box open or click *OK* to save the modifications and exit the dialog box.

Note:

The *Recipients* tab enables you to specify who will receive the alert. Refer to *Alerts Recipient* on page 8-23, for more information.

Adding a New Alert

If necessary, you can create new system alerts. A new alert needs to be defined, for example, when a new event on the POS terminal is created and you need to report on all occurrences of the event.

➤ **To add a new alert**

- 1 In the Alerts Maintenance window, click *New*. The Alerts Maintenance parameters dialog box is displayed, as shown on page 8-14.
- 2 Enter a new number for the alert in the *Number* field. Remember that user-programmed alerts can only have numbers from 1001 - 2000.

- 3 Follow Steps 2-3 in the procedure for defining alert specifications on page 8-13.

Deleting an Alert

This function is used to delete an alert from the alert list.

➤ **To delete an alert**

- 1 In the Alert Maintenance window, highlight the alert to be deleted and click *Delete*. A message box pops up requesting confirmation that the alert is to be deleted.
- 2 Click *Yes* to delete the alert or *No* to retain the alert.

Note:

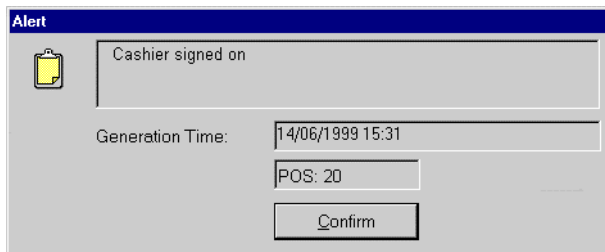
You can deactivate an alert by checking the *Ignore this Alert* checkbox in the appropriate Alert Maintenance parameters dialog box, without needing to actually delete it.

Alert Severity Levels

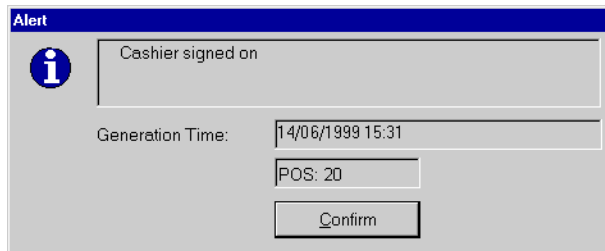
Each alert has an associated severity level. The severity level of alerts is selected from a dropdown list in the Alerts Maintenance parameters dialog box for the relevant alert.

The alert messages that pop up on the server/workstation screen reflect the severity of the alert by means of an icon, as shown in the pictures below. Note that the alert pop-ups display information about the specific alert, together with details of when the alert was generated and from which POS terminal or workstation it was generated.

Severity: None



The None severity level can be used when you wish to be alerted about general functions, for example, a cashier signing on at the start of their shift. This alert level is interchangeable with the Information alert, described below.

Severity: InformationAn alert dialog box titled "Alert" with a blue header bar. On the left is a blue circular icon with a white lowercase 'i'. The main text area contains "Cashier signed on". Below this, the "Generation Time:" is displayed next to a text field containing "14/06/1999 15:31". Below the time field is another text field labeled "POS: 20". At the bottom right is a button labeled "Confirm".

Alert

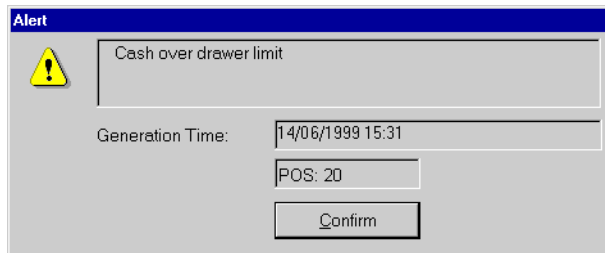
 Cashier signed on

Generation Time: 14/06/1999 15:31

POS: 20

Confirm

The Information severity level can be used when you wish to be alerted about general functions, for example, a cashier signing on at the start of a shift. This alert level is interchangeable with the None alert, described above.

Severity: WarningAn alert dialog box titled "Alert" with a blue header bar. On the left is a yellow triangular icon with a black exclamation mark. The main text area contains "Cash over drawer limit". Below this, the "Generation Time:" is displayed next to a text field containing "14/06/1999 15:31". Below the time field is another text field labeled "POS: 20". At the bottom right is a button labeled "Confirm".

Alert

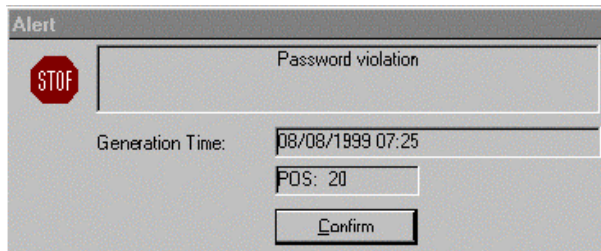
 Cash over drawer limit

Generation Time: 14/06/1999 15:31

POS: 20

Confirm

The Warning severity level can be used for events that could become emergencies if not dealt with quickly, for example, a cashier having too much cash in the cash drawer.

Severity: Emergency

The image shows a Windows-style alert dialog box titled "Alert". On the left side, there is a red octagonal stop sign icon with the word "STOP" in white. To the right of the icon, the text "Password violation" is displayed. Below this, the "Generation Time:" is shown as "08/08/1999 07:25". Underneath the time, there is a field labeled "POS: 20". At the bottom center of the dialog is a button labeled "Confirm".

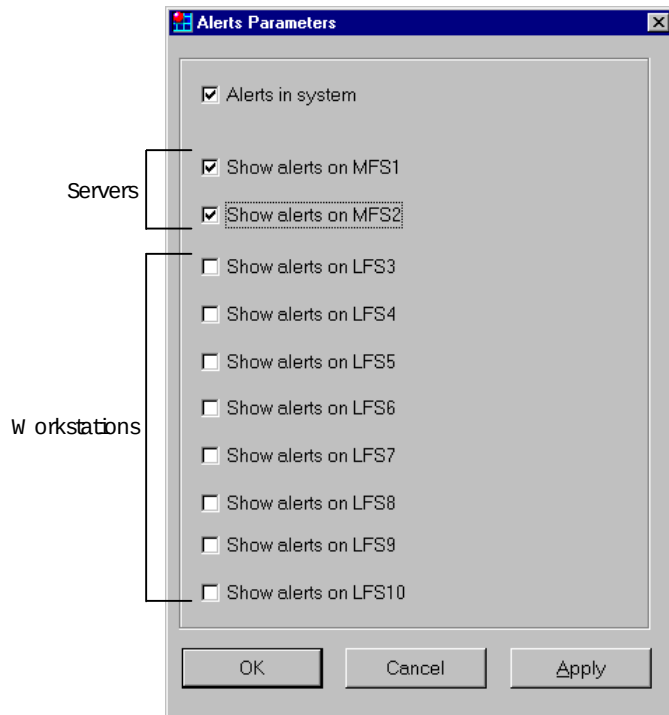
The Emergency severity level can be used for events that need immediate attention. For example, password violations or unauthorized opening of a cash drawer.

Alerts Parameters

After defining alerts, you need to specify to which servers or workstations the alerts should be sent. You can do this by accessing the Alerts Parameters option in the System Alerts menu.

➤ **To specify PCs to receive alerts**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu, double-click on Alerts Parameters or double-click on the *Alerts Parameters* icon on the right side of the window. The Alerts Parameters dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select the checkboxes next to the servers and workstations on which you want the alerts to be displayed.
- 3 Click the *Alerts in system* checkbox. If this checkbox is not checked, no alerts will be created.
- 4 Click *OK* to register your selection and exit the dialog box.

Alerts Recipient

You can send alerts to specific recipients in the following ways:

- By email
- By fax
- To a pager
- To a host computer

An alerts recipient can be any of the following:

A Person: An alert can be sent to a person by email, fax or a pager.

A Host Computer: An alert can be sent to a specific computer, for example, Head Office.

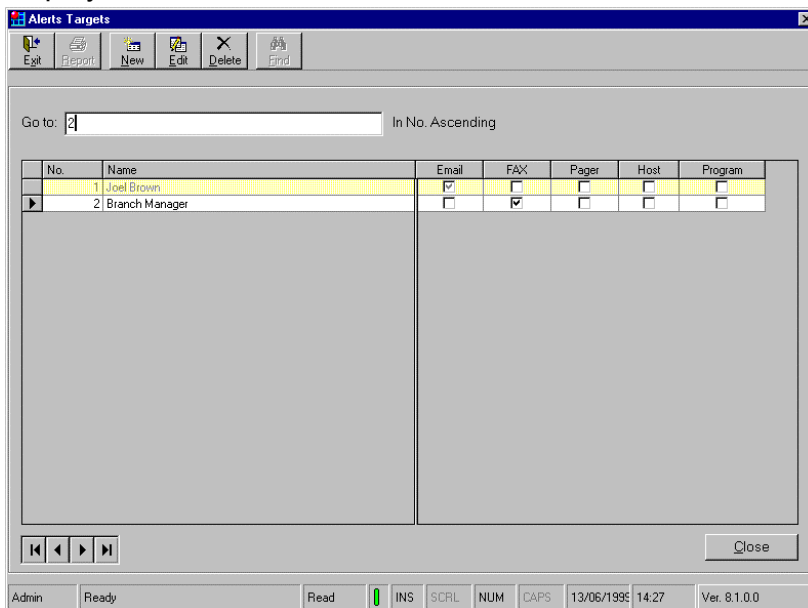
A Program: An alert can be sent to a specific program, for example, data from an alert can be written to a text file in a text editor such as Notepad.

Adding a New Alerts Recipient

Multiple alerts recipients may be defined in the system. You can then specify which alerts should be sent to which recipients, as described on page 8-30.

➤ **To define a new alerts recipient**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu, double-click on Alerts Recipients or double-click on the *Alerts Recipient* icon on the right side of the window. The Alerts Recipients dialog box is displayed.



The Alerts Recipients dialog box displays a list of alerts recipients that have already been defined. The notification method that is active for each recipient is also displayed.

- 2 Click *New*. The Recipient Address dialog box is displayed.

Recipient Address

Recipient Account Number: 1

Name: Robert Wilson

Person Host Program

☒ Use Email Email Address: r.wilson@xyz.com

☐ Use Fax Fax Number:

☒ Use Pager Pager Number: 1-800-938-5201

OK Cancel Apply

- . The recipient is automatically given the next sequential number in the *Recipient Account Number* field.
- 3 Type the name of the recipient in the *Name* field.
- 4 Specify the required recipient destinations in the appropriate fields in the *Person*, *Host* and *Program* tabs, as described in the following section.
- 5 Click *Apply* to save the information and keep the dialog box open or click *OK* to save the information and return to the Alerts Recipients dialog box.

Recipient Address Dialog Box

The Recipient Address dialog box contains three tabs, *Person*, *Host* and *Program*, each of which enables you to specify different recipient destinations. If an alert is sent to this recipient, it will reach all the recipient destinations you specify in these tabs.

Person Tab

The *Person* tab enables you to specify, in the fields provided, how the alerts should be sent to the recipient.

Field	Description
Use Email	Select the checkbox if the recipient is to be advised of alerts by email.
Email Address	Enter the recipient's email address.
Use Fax	Select the checkbox if the recipient is to be advised of alerts by fax.
Fax Number	Enter the recipient's fax number.
Use Pager	Select the checkbox if the recipient is to be advised of alerts by pager.
Pager Number	Enter the recipient's pager number.

Tip:

You can specify more than one method by which an alert will be sent to a recipient, for example, by both fax and email. If you clear one of the checkboxes, the alert will not be sent by that method. However, the specific address or number will be retained in memory for use at a later time, if required.

Host Tab

The *Host* tab enables you to specify a computer to which an alert will be sent.

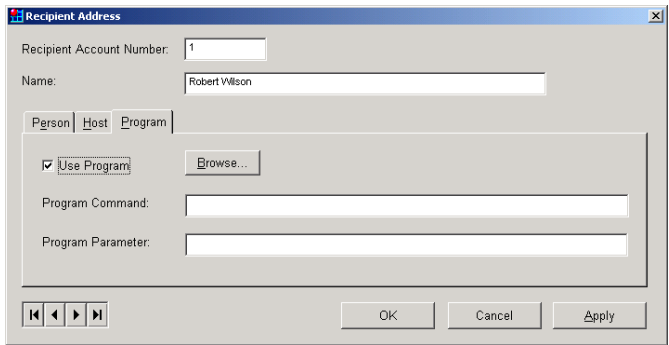
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Target Address" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there are three tabs: "Person", "Host", and "Program". The "Host" tab is currently selected. The "Person" tab contains fields for "Target Account Number:" (with value "1") and "Name:" (with value "Joel Brown"). The "Host" tab contains a checked checkbox labeled "Use Host", a "Name:" field (with value "Cash Office #1"), and a "TCP Address:" field (with value "192.119.233.72"). The "Program" tab is empty. At the bottom of the dialog, there are navigation buttons (back, forward, etc.) and "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply" buttons.

The *Host* tab contains the following fields:

Field	Description
Use Host	Select this checkbox if you want alerts to be sent to a specific computer.
Name	Enter the name of the computer.
TCP Address	Enter the TCP/IP address of the computer.

Program Tab

The *Program* tab enables you to define an application to which data from an alert can be sent.



The *Program* tab contains the following fields:

Field	Description
Use Program	Select this checkbox if you want alerts to be sent to a specific program. Note: The <i>Browse</i> button allows you to find the path to the program. Selecting the location of the program using the <i>Browse</i> button will automatically enter the directory, path and name of the program in the Program Command field, below.
Program Command	Enter the directory, path and name of the program.
Program Parameter	You can specify the program switches or parameters, in order to define how the program should run or what functions it should perform.

Editing Alerts Recipients

Information that has been entered into the Recipient Address dialog box can be modified, if required.

➤ **To edit alerts recipients information**

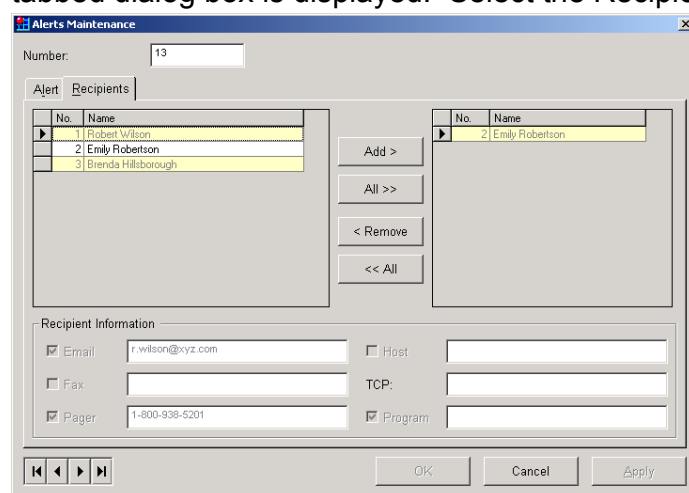
- 1 In the Alerts Recipients dialog box, highlight the recipient that requires modification and click *Edit* or double-click on the recipient, which requires modification. The Recipient Address dialog box is displayed, showing all the current parameters for the selected recipient.
- 2 Change the information as required. Refer to the section *Adding a New Alerts Recipient*, on page 8-24, for further information.

Specifying Which Recipients Receive an Alert

For each alert, you can specify the recipients to which the alert will be sent.

➤ **To specify the recipients that will receive an alert**

- 1 Double-click on an alert in the list in the Alerts Maintenance window, as shown on page 8-5. The Alerts Maintenance tabbed dialog box is displayed. Select the Recipients tab.



The image shows the 'Alerts Maintenance' dialog box with the 'Recipients' tab selected. The 'Number' field is set to 13. The 'Recipients' tab contains two lists of recipients. The left list has three entries: 1 Robert Wilson, 2 Emily Robertson, and 3 Brenda Hillsborough. The right list has one entry: 2 Emily Robertson. Between the lists are four buttons: 'Add >', 'All >>', '< Remove', and '<< All'. Below the lists is a 'Recipient Information' section with four rows: 'Email' (checked, r.wilson@xyz.com), 'Host' (unchecked), 'Fax' (unchecked), and 'Pager' (checked, 1-800-938-5201). There are also fields for 'TCP:' and 'Program'. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

No.	Name
1	Robert Wilson
2	Emily Robertson
3	Brenda Hillsborough

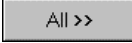
No.	Name
2	Emily Robertson

Buttons: Add >, All >>, < Remove, << All

Recipient Information

☒ Email	r.wilson@xyz.com	☐ Host	
☐ Fax		TCP:	
☒ Pager	1-800-938-5201	☒ Program	

Buttons: OK, Cancel, Apply

- 2 In the *Recipients* tab, select a recipient from the list on the left and click . The recipient's name and number are displayed on the right. Repeat this procedure to select other recipients for the alert or click  to add all the recipients.

Note:

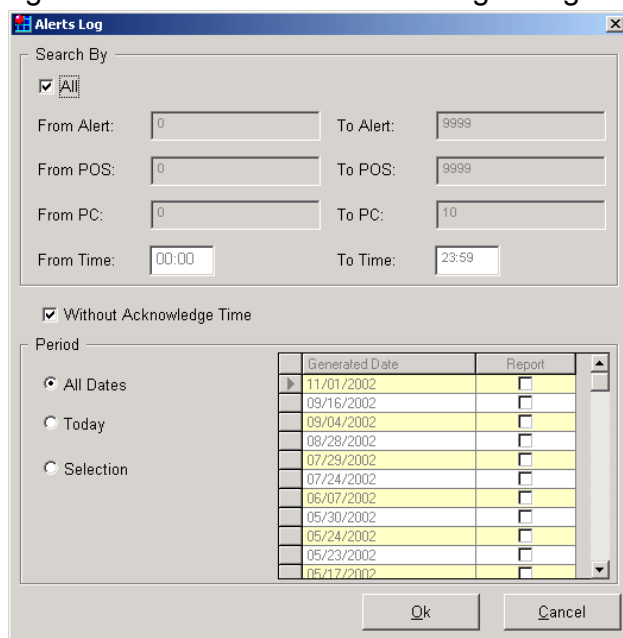
To remove a recipient after it has been selected, select the recipient in the list on the right and click , or click  to remove all selected recipients.

Alerts Log

The Alerts Log provides management with a record of all alerts generated in the StoreLine/ISS45 system. You can access this log and display all the alerts, or you can search for and display specific alerts.

➤ **To access the Alerts log**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu in the Utilities folder, double-click Alerts Log or double-click on the *Alerts Log* icon on the right of the window. The Alerts Log dialog box displays.



The Alerts Log dialog box is a window titled "Alerts Log" with a standard Windows XP-style title bar. It contains several sections for filtering and displaying alert data.

Search By

☒ All

From Alert: To Alert:

From POS: To POS:

From PC: To PC:

From Time: To Time:

☒ Without Acknowledge Time

Period

☒ All Dates

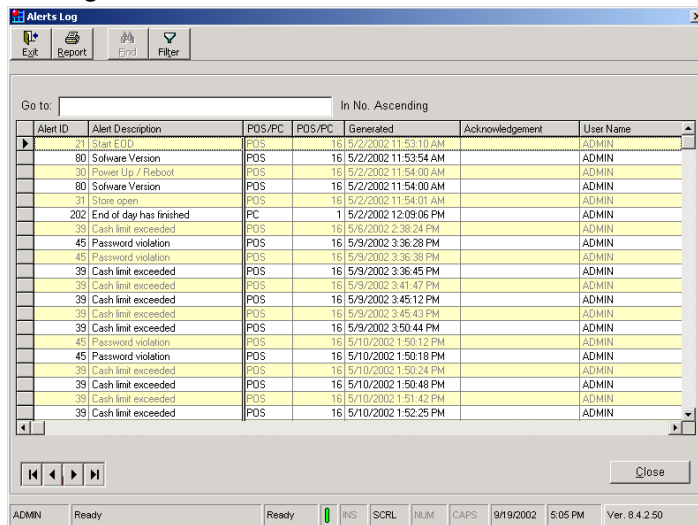
☐ Today

☐ Selection

Generated Date	Report
11/01/2002	☐
09/16/2002	☐
09/04/2002	☐
08/28/2002	☐
07/29/2002	☐
07/24/2002	☐
06/07/2002	☐
05/30/2002	☐
05/24/2002	☐
05/23/2002	☐
05/17/2002	☐

At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: "Ok" and "Cancel".

- 2 Select the *All* checkbox to display all alerts in the log or clear the *All* checkbox and search for specific alerts, as described in the following section.
- 3 Click *OK*.
- 4 The Alerts Log window is displayed showing all the alerts in the log.

**Note:**

Click *Filter* to access the Alerts Log dialog box in order to search for further alerts.

Searching for Specific Alerts

You can use the Alerts Log dialog box, described on the previous page, to search for specific alerts, for example, alerts generated at a certain POS terminal or at a specific time.

➤ **To search for specific alerts**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu in the Utilities folder, double-click on Alerts Log or from the Alerts Log window, click *Filter*. The Alerts Log dialog box is displayed, as shown on page 8-32.
- 2 Clear the *All* checkbox and enter information in the other fields, as described below.

Field	Description
From Alert / To Alert	Enter the range of alerts you want the log to display.
From POS / To POS	Enter the range of POS terminal ID numbers, to see alerts for those terminals only.
From PC / To PC	Enter the range of PC ID numbers, to see alerts for those PCs only.
From Time / To Time	Enter the time range during which the alerts should have been generated.

Note:

You can enter information into more than one of these fields at the same time, to make your search more specific.

- 3 Click the *Without Acknowledge Time* checkbox if you do not require the log to display information about when the alerts were acknowledged by the recipients.

- 4 Click the relevant radio button in the *Period* area of the dialog box to specify that you want to see alerts from a specific period.

Field	Description
All Dates	Searches for alerts generated on all dates.
Today	Searches for alerts generated on the current day.
Selection	Enables you to find alerts from specific dates.

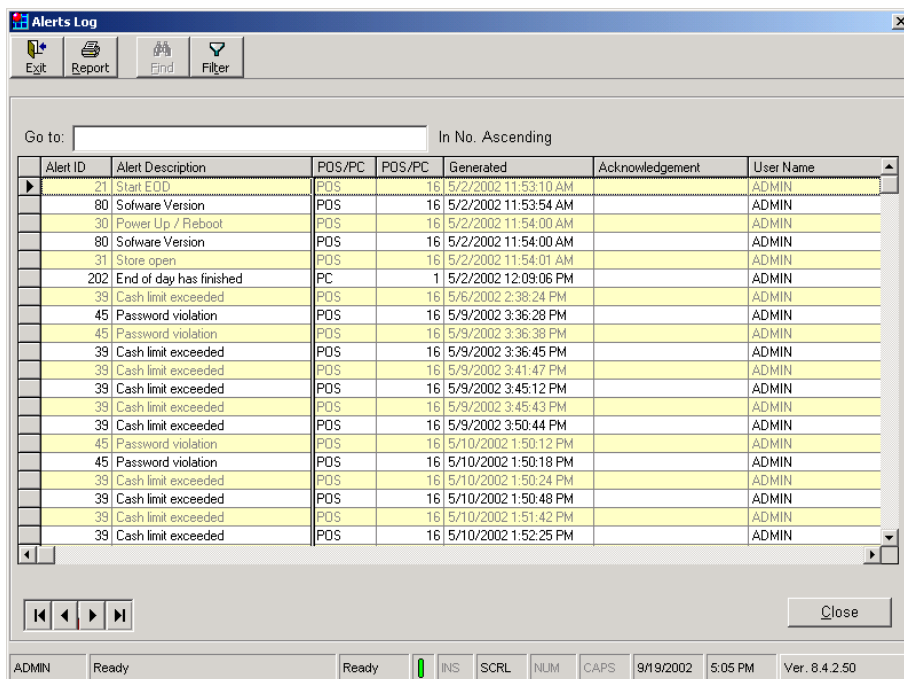
- . If you click the *Selection* radio button, select the appropriate checkboxes in the report field in the *Period* area, to select specific daily alert logs.
- 5 Click *OK*. The Alerts Log window, as shown on page 8-33, displays the selected alerts that were found, according to your search.

Note:

If the *Ignore This Alert* checkbox was checked when the Alert was defined, the alert will not be displayed in the Alerts Log.

Alerts Log Window

The Alerts Log window displays the alerts in the Alerts Log. The specific alerts displayed in the window depend on your search, as described on page 8-33.



The Alerts Log window contains the following:

■ Toolbar

The following buttons are displayed in the toolbar at the top of the window:

Button	Description
	Exits the Alerts Transaction window and returns to the main ISS45 window.
	Opens a Report Manager window that displays a preview of the report to be printed. For more information about the Report Manager window, refer to the <i>Reports Reference Manual</i> .
	The Find tool is not enabled in this version.
	Displays the Alerts Log dialog box, enabling you to search for a different set of alerts. Refer to <i>Searching for Specific Alerts</i> , on page 8-34, for further information.

■ Go To Field

The *Go to* field enables you to specify the alert ID code that you want to select in the list of alerts.

Note:

This function is currently unavailable.

■ Alerts Log List

Alerts are listed, together with their basic information. Each column heading represents a different field of information.

Field	Description
Alert ID	The code number for the specific alert.
Alert Description	
POS/PC	Whether the alert was generated from a POS terminal (POS) or the Back Office (PC).
POS/PC ID	ID number of the POS terminal or PC.
Generated	Date and time the alert was generated.
Acknowledgement	Date and Time that the recipient acknowledged the alert. (If the Without Acknowledge Time checkbox was checked in the Alerts Log dialog box, shown on page 8-32, this field will be empty.)
User Name	Name of the user who acknowledged the alert.

■ Search Arrows

Enable you to scroll through the alerts list.



Use the arrows at the extreme left and right to navigate to the first and last alerts in the list. The center arrows enable you to navigate up and down the list by single alerts.

Sorting the Alerts Log List

The list of alerts in the Alerts Log window can be sorted by any of the displayed information fields.

➤ **To sort the Alerts Log**

- 1 Click on the column heading representing the information by which you require the log to be sorted. It will be sorted in ascending order
- 2 Click a second time on the same column heading to sort the log in descending order. For example, if you click on the *Alerts ID* title once, the log will be sorted by Alerts ID code in ascending order. If you click *Alerts ID* a second time, the log will be sorted by Alerts ID code in descending order.

9

User Access Log

The User Access Log utility enables Management to track access to selected menu entries by users.

This utility also includes a Queries and Reports option.

User Access Log Utility,
page 9-3

Selecting Menu Entries for
Tracking, page 9-3

User Access Log Queries,
page 9-6

User Access Log Utility

The User Access Log utility enables management to track user access to selected menu entries.

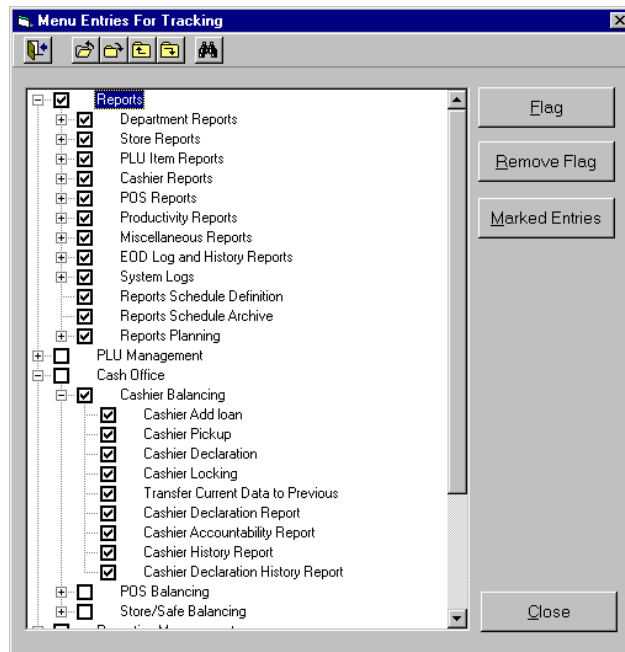
Selecting Menu Entries for Tracking

At the initial stage of the tracking process, a manager selects specific menu entries (main menus or submenus) and flags them. Selecting a menu, automatically selects its submenus. However, selecting a submenu does not automatically select the menu of which it is a part. Data about each user who accesses any flagged Menu Entry is stored in a log file.

The steps below describe how to activate the User Access Log utility.

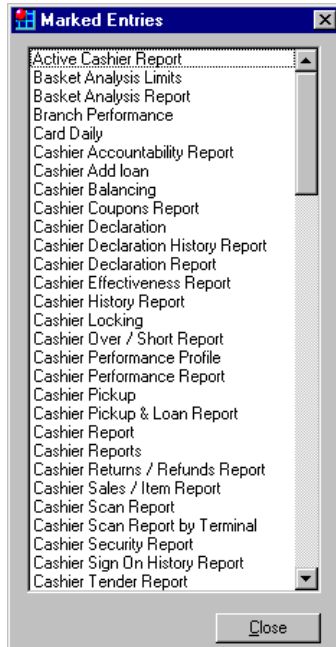
➤ **To select Menu Entries for Tracking**

- 1 From the Utilities menu, select User Access Log and then select Menu Entries For Tracking. The Menu Entries For Tracking dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select the checkbox(es) for the required menu or submenu, or click on the menu and then click *Flag*.

- 3 Click *Marked Entries*. The Marked Entries dialog box is displayed, showing all the selected menus and submenus.



- 4 Click *Close* to close the Marked Entries dialog box.
- 5 Click *Close* to close the Marked Entries for Tracking dialog box. The selected entries are saved in the system so that each access to the selected menus will be tracked.

User Access Log Queries

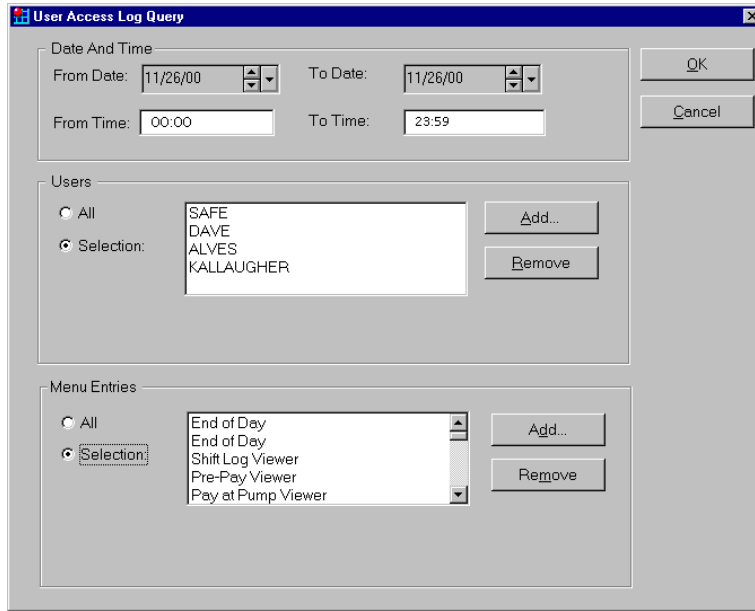
As previously explained, after Menu Entries have been flagged, a Log file is created. This Log file stores data about all users who accessed the flagged Menu Entries.

The User Access Log Queries option enables you to generate queries and reports that relate to data in the Log file. Generating queries is performed by defining the following:

- **Date and Time:** The time range to which the query is to be applied.
- **Users:** The user names to which the query is to be applied.
- **Menu Entries:** The menu entries to which the query is to be applied.

➤ **To access the User Access Log Queries Report**

- 1 From the Utilities menu, select User Access Log and then User Access Log Query. The User Access Log Query dialog box is displayed.

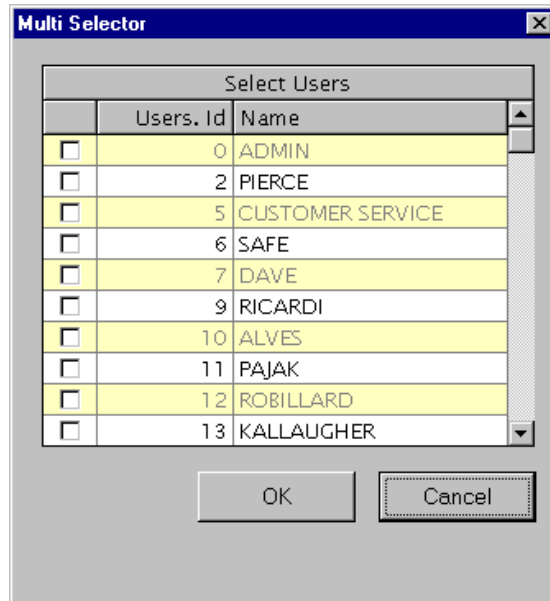


The dialog box is titled "User Access Log Query". It contains three main sections: "Date And Time", "Users", and "Menu Entries".

- Date And Time:** Includes "From Date:" (11/26/00), "To Date:" (11/26/00), "From Time:" (00:00), and "To Time:" (23:59). There are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons to the right.
- Users:** Includes radio buttons for "All" and "Selection:". The "Selection:" option is selected. A list box contains the names: SAFE, DAVE, ALVES, and KALLAUGHER. There are "Add..." and "Remove" buttons to the right.
- Menu Entries:** Includes radio buttons for "All" and "Selection:". The "Selection:" option is selected. A list box contains the menu entries: End of Day, End of Day, Shift Log Viewer, Pre-Pay Viewer, and Pay at Pump Viewer. There are "Add..." and "Remove" buttons to the right.

- 2 In the Date And Time selection area:
 - Select the required period in the *From Date* and *To Date* fields to specify a date range for the report.
 - Enter a time in the *From Time* and *To Time* fields to specify a time range, if required.

- 3 In the Users selection area, you can select the *All* radio button to enable you to select all the system users, or select the *Selection* radio button to enable you to select specific users. The Multi Selector dialog box is displayed.

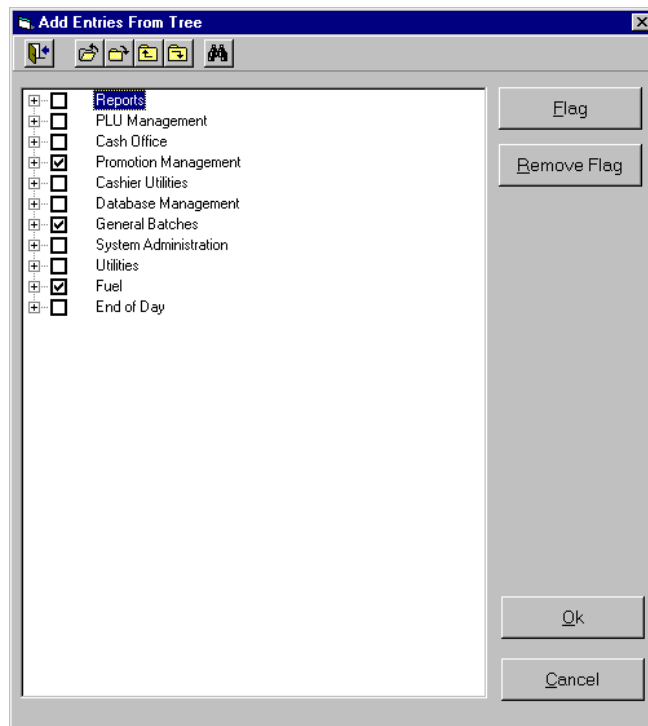


- 4 Select the checkboxes for the required user or users and click *OK*. The selected users are added to the Users selection area in the User Access Log Query dialog box.
- 5 You can modify the original selection by clicking the *Add* button in the Users frame. The Multi Selector dialog box is displayed. Add users as described in Step 4.

Or

You can modify the original selection by highlighting a user name in the Users frame and clicking the *Remove* button. The user name is deleted from the list.

- 6 In the Menu Entries selection area, you can select the *All* radio button to enable you to select all the menu entries, or select the *Selection* radio button to enable you to select the required menu entries. The Add Entries From Tree dialog box is displayed.



- 7 Select the checkbox(es) for the required menu or submenu, or click on a menu to select it and then click *Flag*.

Note:

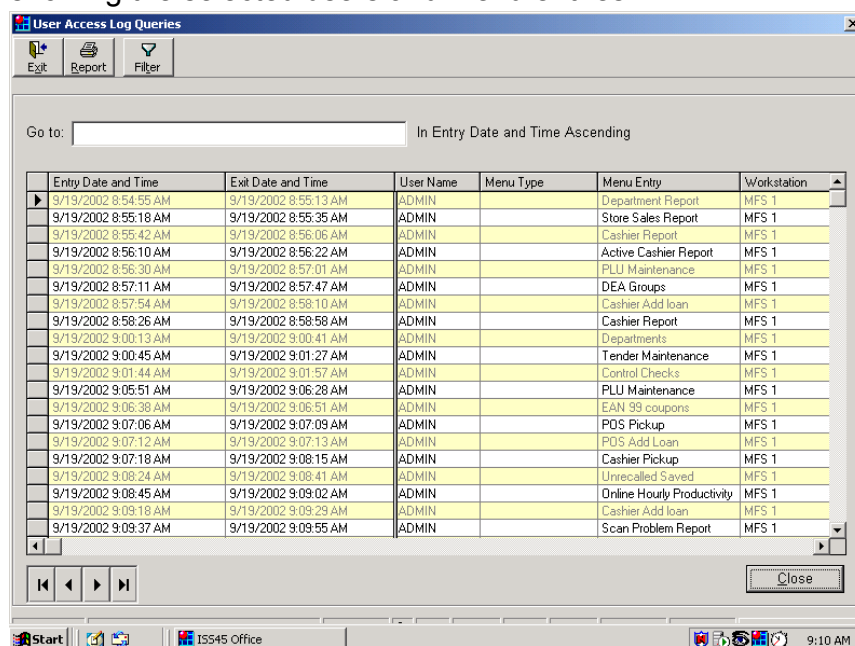
You can click the expand buttons to the left of the checkboxes to display submenus.

- 8 Click *OK*. The selected menus are added to the Menu Entries selection area in the User Access Log Query dialog box.
- 9 You can modify the original selection by clicking the *Add* button in the Menu Entries selection area. The Add Entries From Tree dialog box is displayed. Add menus as described in Step 7.

Or

You can modify the original selection by highlighting a menu in the Menu Entries selection area and clicking the *Remove* button. The menu is deleted from the list.

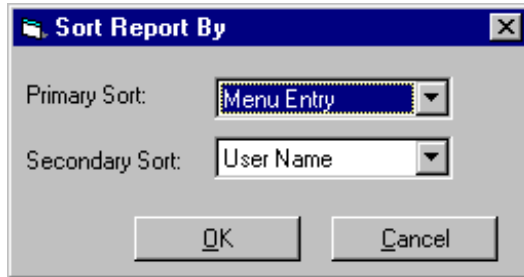
- 10 Click **OK** in the User Access Log Queries selection dialog box to run the query based on your selections. The report data is displayed in the User Access Log Queries dialog box, showing the selected users and menu entries.



Note:

In the User Access Log Queries dialog box, above, you can sort the data by a specific column by clicking on the appropriate column heading.

- 11 Click the *Report* icon. The Sort Report By dialog box is displayed.



Note:

The Primary and Secondary Sort Options reflect the various column headings in the User Access Log Report. The column headings are Entry Date, Exit Date, User Name, Menu Type, Menu Entry and PC Number. Refer to Step 13, below, for definitions of the column headings.

- 12 Select the required sorting option for the *Primary Sort* and *Secondary Sort* fields, and click OK. The User Access Log Report is displayed.

Report Manager

1 of 1+ 100% Total: 21 100% 21 of 21

User Access Log Report

XYZ Markets

Branch 2

Enter Date	Exit Date	User Name	Menu Type	Menu Entry	WA
9/19/2002 8:56:10AM	9/19/2002 8:56:22AM	ADMIN		Active Cashier Report	
9/19/2002 8:57:54AM	9/19/2002 8:58:10AM	ADMIN		Cashier Add loan	
9/19/2002 9:09:18AM	9/19/2002 9:09:29AM	ADMIN		Cashier Add loan	
9/19/2002 9:07:18AM	9/19/2002 9:08:15AM	ADMIN		Cashier Pickup	
9/19/2002 8:55:42AM	9/19/2002 8:56:06AM	ADMIN		Cashier Report	
9/19/2002 8:58:26AM	9/19/2002 8:58:58AM	ADMIN		Cashier Report	
9/19/2002 9:01:44AM	9/19/2002 9:01:57AM	ADMIN		Control Checks	
9/19/2002 8:57:11AM	9/19/2002 8:57:47AM	ADMIN		DEA Groups	
9/19/2002 8:54:55AM	9/19/2002 8:55:13AM	ADMIN		Department Report	
9/19/2002 9:00:13AM	9/19/2002 9:00:41AM	ADMIN		Departments	
9/19/2002 9:06:38AM	9/19/2002 9:06:51AM	ADMIN		EAN 99 coupons	
9/19/2002 9:10:05AM	9/19/2002 9:10:28AM	ADMIN		Itemized Check Report By	

- 13 Click the *Print* icon to print the report.

The report that is produced displays the following information:

- **Enter Date:** The date and time that the user accessed the Menu Entry.
- **Exit Date:** The date and time that the user logged out of the Menu Entry.
- **User Name:** The name of the user who accessed the Menu Entry.
- **Menu Type:** The default menu that is displayed when the user logs into the system.
- **Menu Entry:** The name of the Menu Entry that was accessed by the user.
- **Workstation:** The workstation from which the user accessed the Menu Entry.

© StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC 2002

Fujitsu Transaction Solutions, Inc. endeavors to ensure that the information in this document is correct and fairly stated but does not accept liability for any error or omission.

The development of Fujitsu Transaction Solutions products and services is continuous and published information may not be up to date. It is important to check the current position with Fujitsu. This document is not part of a contract or license save insofar as may be expressly agreed.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC
1250 East Arques Avenue, M/S 363
Sunnyvale, CA 94085

P/N 89000118
PIN 45001/043